```
0001
1
2
      IN THE UNITED STATES DISTRICT COURT
3
          DISTRICT OF NEW JERSEY
          Civ. No. 04-3749 (JAP)
5
          (Consolidated Cases)
          Hon. Joel A. Pisano
      ----+
  IN RE ROYAL DUTCH/SHELL
  TRANSPORT SECURITIES
10
  LITIGATION
                       ١
11
  ----+
12
13
         Videotaped Deposition of
14
             SIMON HENRY
15
            Washington, D.C.
         Monday, October 16th, 2006
16
             10:00 a.m.
17
18
19
20
21
22
23 Job No. 22-84924
24 Pages 1 - 236, Volume I
25 Reported by: Laurie Bangart-Smith
0002
1
2
         Videotaped Deposition of
            SIMON HENRY
3
4
6
  Held at the offices of:
7
        LEBOEUF, LAMB, GREENE & MACRAE, LLP
       1875 Connecticut Avenue, Northwest
        Suite 1200
8
       Washington, D.C. 20009
```

```
file:///Cl/Documents%20and%20Settings/daustin/Desktop/Deposition%20Transcripts/101606sh.txt
      Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 2 of 200 PageID: 23839
9
        (202)986-8000
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
         Taken pursuant to notice, before Laurie
   Bangart-Smith, Registered Professional Reporter
22
   and Notary Public in and for the District of
   Columbia.
24
25
0003
1
          APPEARANCES
3
   ON BEHALF OF LEAD PLAINTIFF IN THE CLASS:
4
        TIMOTHY J. MACFALL, ESQUIRE
5
        CHRISTINE LAURENT, ESQUIRE
6
        STANLEY BERNSTEIN, ESQUIRE
7
        JEFFREY HABER, ESQUIRE
        BERNSTEIN, LIEBHARD & LIFSHITZ, LLP
8
9
        10 East 40th Street
10
         New York, New York 10016
         Telephone: (212)779-1414
11
   ON BEHALF OF OPTED-OUT PLAINTIFFS:
12
         CHRISTINE MACKINTOSH, ESQUIRE
13
14
         GRANT & EISENHOFER
15
         1201 N. Market
         Wilmington, Deleware 19801
16
17
         Telephone: (302)622-7081
18
   ON BEHALF OF ROYAL DUTCH/SHELL AND THE WITNESS:
19
         RALPH C. FERRARA, ESQUIRE
20
         LEBOEUF, LAMB, GREENE & MACRAE, LLP
21
         1875 Connecticut Avenue, Northwest
         Suite 1200
22
23
         Washington, D.C. 20009
24
         Telephone: (202)986-8000
```

```
file:///Cl/Documents%20and%20Settings/daustin/Desktop/Deposition%20Transcripts/101606sh.txt
      Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 3 of 200 PageID: 23840
0004
1
2 (Appearances continued)
  ALSO ON BEHALF OF ROYAL DUTCH/SHELL AND THE
4 WITNESS:
5
        CHARLES F. PLATT, ESQUIRE
        SENIOR LEGAL COUNSEL
6
7
        SHELL INTERNATIONAL B.V.
8
        Legal Services LSEP-C
9
        Volmerlaan 7
10
        P.O. Box 60
         2280 AB Rijswijk-ZH
11
         Telephone: +31(0)70 447 4219
12
   ALSO ON BEHALF OF ROYAL DUTCH/SHELL AND THE
13
   WITNESS:
15
         COLBY SMITH, ESQUIRE
         DAVID WARE, ESQUIRE
16
17
         DEBEVOISE & PLIMPTON, LLP
18
         555 13th Street, Northwest
19
         Washington, D.C. 20004
         Telephone: (202)383-8000
20
21
22
23
24
25
0005
1
   (Appearances continued)
3
   ON BEHALF OF PRICEWATERHOUSECOOPERS:
        SAVVAS A. FOUKAS, ESQUIRE
4
5
        HUGHES, HUBBARD & REED, LLP
6
        One Battery Park Plaza
7
        New York, New York 10004-1482
8
        Telephone: (212)837-6086
   ON BEHALF OF KPMG ACCOUNTANTS N.V.:
10
         TRACEY TISKA, ESQUIRE
         HOGAN & HARTSON, LLP
11
12
         875 Third Avenue
```

New York, New York 10022

Telephone: (212)918-3000

ON BEHALF OF JUDITH BOYNTON:

REBECCA E. WICKHEM, ESQUIRE

13

14

15

```
file:///Cl/Documents%20and%20Settings/daustin/Desktop/Deposition%20Transcripts/101606sh.txt
      Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 4 of 200 PageID: 23841
17
         FOLEY & LARDNER, LLP
18
         777 East Wisconsin Avenue
19
         Milwaukee, Wisconsin 53202-5306
         Telephone: (414)297-5681
20
21
22
23
24
25
0006
1
   (Appearances continued)
3
   ON BEHALF OF SIR PHILIP WATTS:
        ADRIAEN M. MORSE, JR., ESQUIRE
4
5
        AKRIVI MAZARAKIS, ESQUIRE
6
        MAYER, BROWN, ROWE & MAW, LLP
7
        1909 K Street, Northwest
8
        Washington, D.C. 20006-1101
9
        Telephone: (202)263-3000
10
   Also present:
         Chris Martinez
11
         Cali Day, Videographer
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
0007
1
2
           EXAMINATION INDEX
                             PAGE
3
4
   EXAMINATION BY MR. MACFALL ......10
5
6
7
```

20

21 22

23

plaintiffs in the class.

Bernstein, Liebhard & Lifshitz.

MR. BERNSTEIN: Stanley Bernstein,

MR. HABER: Jeffrey Haber, Bernstein,

Liebhard & Lifshitz, on behalf of lead plaintiff,

- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 MS. MACKINTOSH: Christine Mackintosh,
- 3 Grant & Eisenhofer, on behalf of the opted-out
- 4 plaintiffs.
- 5 MR. WARE: David Ware, Debevoise &
- 6 Plimpton, on behalf of Royal Dutch/Shell.
- 7 MR. SMITH: Colby Smith from Debevoise &
- 8 Plimpton on behalf of the corporate defendants,
- 9 Royal Dutch Petroleum and Shell Transport and
- 10 Trading, and for the witness.
- 11 MR. PLATT: Charles Platt, Shell
- 12 International, on behalf of Royal Dutch/Shell.
- MS. TISKA: Tracey Tiska from Hogan &
- 14 Hartson for defendants KPMJ Accountants, N.V.
- MR. FOUKAS: Savvas Foukas, Hughes,
- 16 Hubbard & Reed, for PricewaterhouseCoopers, LLP.
- 17 MS. MAZARAKIS: Akrivi Mazarakis, Mayer,
- 18 Brown, Rowe & Maw, Sir Philip Watts.
- MR. MORSE: Adriaen Morse, Mayer, Brown,
- 20 Rowe & Maw, for Phil Watts.
- 21 MS. WICKHEM: Rebecca Wickhem of Foley &
- 22 Lardner, LLP, for Judith Boynton.
- MR. FERRARA: Ralph Ferrara, LeBoeuf
- 24 Lamb, on behalf of the corporate defendants, Shell
- 25 Transport and Trading and Royal Dutch/Shell, and 0010
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 the witness appearing here today, Mr. Simon Henry.
- THE VIDEOGRAPHER: The court reporter
- 4 today is Laurie Bangart-Smith of LegaLink New
- 5 York. Would the reporter please swear in the
- 6 witness.
- 7 SIMON HENRY,
- 8 having been duly sworn, testified as follows:
- 9 EXAMINATION BY COUNSEL FOR PLAINTIFFS
- 10 BY MR. MACFALL:
- 11 Q Good morning, Mr. Henry.
- 12 A Good morning.
- 13 Q We met a few moments ago. My name is
- 14 Tim MacFall. I'm going to be asking you a few
- 15 questions today with regard to this litigation

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 7 of 200 PageID: 23844

- 16 pending against Royal Dutch/Shell.
- 17 I'd like to go over a few ground rules,
- 18 which I'm sure your counsel has already covered
- 19 with you, but just for the sake of clarity, if at
- 20 any point you feel like you need a break or you
- 21 would like to consult with counsel, just indicate
- 22 that to me, and I'm sure we can accommodate you.
- 23 If at some point I ask a question that you don't
- 24 understand or is unclear, just indicate that, and
- 25 I'll be more than happy to rephrase it for you.

0011

- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 In order to have a clear record,
- 3 although the deposition is being video-recorded,
- 4 it's necessary for you to answer audibly, using
- 5 words, in order for the court reporter to record
- 6 it in the transcript.
- 7 Do you understand, sir?
- 8 A I do.
- 9 Q Mr. Henry, have you ever had your
- 10 deposition taken before, sir?
- 11 A Yes, I have.
- 12 Q Okay. Could you please briefly describe
- 13 what that deposition was taken in connection with.
- 14 A In November 2004 a deposition taken by
- 15 Securities and Exchange Commission in relation to
- 16 the same issues that this deposition covers.
- 17 Q And I take it by that you mean the
- 18 recategorization of certain proved reserves by
- 19 Royal Dutch/Shell; is that correct, sir?
- A That's correct.
- Q Separate and apart from that deposition,
- 22 have you ever had your deposition taken before,
- 23 sir?
- 24 A No.
- Q Mr. Henry, could you please briefly

- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 describe for me your educational background,
- 3 beginning with University.
- 4 A I studied mathematics at Cambridge
- 5 University in England from 1979 to 1982. I
- 6 graduated first class honors in 1982, was awarded

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 8 of 200 PageID: 23845

- 7 a Bachelor of Arts degree, and in 1986 received a
- 8 masters of arts degree from the same university.
- 9 That is the academic education.
- 10 I have a professional qualification in
- 11 addition. I'm an associate member of the
- 12 Chartered Institute of Management Accountants, a
- 13 U.K.-based institute, where I studied from 1986 to
- 14 1988 and became an associate member in 1989, and I
- 15 remained a member of that institution.
- 16 Q I believe you used the term "Chartered
- 17 Accountant." Is there another type of accountancy
- 18 in the U.K.?
- 19 A Yes. There are at least three types of
- 20 accountancy that I'm aware of: Certified
- 21 Accountant, Institute of Chartered Accountants,
- 22 and the Institute to which I belong, which is the
- 23 Chartered Institute of Management Accountants --
- 24 the Institute of Chartered Accountants of England
- 25 and Wales, and then there's the Institute of which 0013
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 I'm a member, the Chartered Institute of
- 3 Management Accountants, so technically I'm a
- 4 Chartered Management Accountant.
- 5 Q Are you currently employed, sir?
- 6 A Yes, I am.
- 7 Q And could you please tell me by whom you
- 8 are currently employed.
- 9 A I'm employed by Shell International
- 10 Exploration & Production based in Rijswijk in The
- 11 Hague and the Netherlands.
- 12 Q What position do you hold with Shell?
- 13 A I'm the Executive Vice President Finance
- 14 for the Exploration & Production Business.
- 15 Q How long have you been employed by
- 16 Shell?
- 17 A Twenty-four years and one month. I
- 18 joined in September 1982.
- 19 Q I realize this is a very long period of
- 20 time that we'd like to cover, but if you could
- 21 very briefly describe for me the various positions
- 22 that you've held within Shell since you've been
- 23 employed.

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 9 of 200 PageID: 23846

- A I joined as an instrument engineer, in
- 25 the engineering function at Stanlow Refinery in 0014
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 the United Kingdom. After four years in that
- 3 role, I moved to Internal Audit based in
- 4 Manchester in England. After two years in that
- 5 role, in 1988 I moved to Shell Haven Refinery in
- 6 Southern England to head an IT project, and in
- 7 1990 I moved to ShellMex House in London as the
- 8 head of Management Accounts for Shell U.K.
- 9 Downstream Business. In 1992 I moved to Egypt to
- 10 take over as Finance Manager of Shell Marketing
- 11 Egypt, and in 1994 I stayed in Egypt but moved to
- 12 the Upstream Exploration & Production Business as
- 13 Finance Controller.
- In 1996 I returned to London in Shell
- 15 Center as the Shareholder Finance Advisor for the
- 16 Downstream Businesses in Asia Pacific. In
- 17 March 1998 I moved to Bangkok in Thailand as the
- 18 Finance Director for the Mekong Cluster, which was
- 19 Finance Director for all of Shell's Businesses in
- 20 Thailand, Vietnam, Laos and Cambodia. While I was
- 21 in Bangkok we reorganized, and I became the
- 22 General Manager of Finance for the Retail
- 23 Marketing Business in Southeast Asia, and for part
- 24 of that time I was also the General Manager of
- 25 Marketing in the Business. At the end of 2000, 0015
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 December 2000, I returned to London again to take
- 3 over as head of Shell Group Investor Relations,
- 4 which I did for just over three years, and in
- 5 April 2004 I moved to my current position.
- 6 Q Could you please briefly describe for me
- 7 your duties and responsibilities in your position
- 8 at Internal Audit.
- 9 A I was a member of a ten-person team who
- 10 covered audit for manufacturing facilities,
- 11 supply, distribution in the U.K. Downstream and
- 12 Chemicals Businesses. I was the specialist member
- 13 of the team who had a manufacturing/refining
- 14 background, so I was there as a specialist

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 10 of 200 PageID:

- 15 resource, but also at the same time I was study 130 47
- 16 for my accountancy examination. So I actually did
- 17 a significant number of financial audit activities
- 18 to help with that study, and also participated
- 19 with some cross-audits with a different audit team
- 20 in marketing audit, specifically retail marketing
- 21 audit. I was both a Team Lead for an audit and a
- 22 member of Audit Teams, depending on the size and
- 23 the materiality of the audit.
- 24 Q Thank you. Are you familiar with the
- 25 term "proved reserves"?
- 0016
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 A Yes, I am.
- 3 Q And could you please explain for me your
- 4 understanding of that term.
- 5 MR. SMITH: His understanding today?
- 6 BY MR. MACFALL:
- 7 Q Yes.
- 8 A My understanding of "proved reserves,"
- 9 reserves that are classified as reserves, proved
- 10 reserves under Regulation 4-10, defined with
- 11 reasonable certainty, meeting certain technical
- 12 and economic criteria as outlined both in
- 13 Regulation 4-10 and then subsequent guidelines
- 14 issued by the SEC.
- 15 Q Is your understanding of "proved
- 16 reserves" the same now as it was during the 2000
- 17 and 2003 time period?
- 18 A No, it is not.
- 19 Q Okay. Could you please explain for me
- 20 what your understanding of the term "proved
- 21 reserves," if you had such an understanding, was
- 22 during that time period.
- 23 MR. SMITH: Objection to form.
- 24 BY MR. MACFALL:
- 25 Q You can answer.
- 0017
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 A My understanding of the "proved
- 3 reserves" at the time, 2000 to 2004, just in
- 4 context, I have the financial background and
- 5 clearly I was familiar with the requirements for

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 11 of 200 PageID:

- 6 reporting financial data and standards. As hea@3848
- 7 of Investor Relations, I had a broader remit to
- 8 understand more broadly information that was put
- 9 into the public domain by Shell. And as my role
- 10 evolved over the years and different items became
- 11 of interest to investors, I took it on myself to
- 12 ask people in Shell for explanation at various
- 13 times of what "proved reserves" definitions meant
- 14 largely in the context of current or future
- 15 actions or events, such as an investment decision
- 16 and what impact that might have on the proved
- 17 reserves that Shell were to report. I had
- 18 basically a series of communications which were
- 19 usually on single, single issues. There was no
- 20 overriding or broad training learning program that
- 21 gave me that knowledge.
- Q Describe for me how it is you came to
- 23 that understanding during that time period. Do
- 24 you recall what your understanding of the actual
- 25 term was during that time period?
- 0018
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 MR. SMITH: Objection to form.
- 3 THE WITNESS: The -- just clarify the
- 4 question. My understanding of what --
- 5 BY MR. MACFALL:
- 6 Q Of the term "proved reserves." Let me
- 7 ask this: Did it differ from the understanding
- 8 that you just described previously regard to SEC
- 9 Rule 4-10?
- 10 MR. SMITH: Objection to form.
- 11 THE WITNESS: Okay. Firstly, I wasn't
- 12 familiar with Regulation 4-10 until a later date.
- 13 However, the words "reasonable certainty," what I
- 14 was familiar with, and the need to demonstrate
- 15 conditions that matter, that phrase "reasonable
- 16 certainty," such as commitment to proceed with a
- 17 project, I was at that time less aware than I now
- 18 am about some of the technical issues or some of
- 19 the economic issues that might enable a
- 20 hydrocarbon resource to be classified as proven
- 21 reserves or not.
- 22 BY MR. MACFALL:

- Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 12 of 200 PageID:
- Q Did you ever receive any formal training849
- 24 within Shell in connection with proven reserves?
- A Yes, I have.
- 0019
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 Q And could you please describe that for
- 3 me.
- 4 A During 2004 -- and I can't recall the
- 5 exact date, but most likely third quarter time --
- 6 I participated in the training, the reserves
- 7 training that followed the recategorization
- 8 exercise that was provided for the EP Leadership
- 9 Team at that point in time, so roughly a full day
- 10 in terms of the requirements. And I've
- 11 subsequently been involved in various engagements
- 12 through the Reserve Committee about updated
- 13 guidance or updated understanding of the rules.
- 14 The formal training was the one day in 2004.
- 15 Q Prior to 2004 -- withdraw. In your
- 16 position as Finance Controller in Egypt in 1994,
- 17 did you ever have occasion to work with or utilize
- 18 proved reserves?
- 19 A Yes, I did.
- 20 Q And could you please describe that for
- 21 me.
- A Proved reserves is the basis of the
- 23 calculation of depreciation, depletion,
- 24 amortization of the financial accounts, and
- 25 therefore I was responsible for that calculation 0020
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 of the ultimate financial reporting of the
- 3 company, and therefore at the end of each year and
- 4 during each year at the quarter, quarter reporting
- 5 date, I was aware of what the currently reported
- 6 reserves for each of the assets within the country
- 7 were and what impact that had on the reported
- 8 depreciation, and I would be aware of changes that
- 9 were made inasmuch as they impacted the
- 10 depreciation charge, but I was not involved in or
- 11 really knowledgable about the underlying reasons
- 12 for the changes.

13

Q Could you please briefly describe for me

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 13 of 200 PageID:

- 14 the relationship between proved reserves and 23850
- 15 depreciation.
- 16 A The requirement under 569 for
- 17 depreciation of balance sheet amounts for Upstream
- 18 assets is to depreciate those assets on a unit of
- 19 production basis. This means that, for example,
- 20 if a hundred million dollars has been spent on the
- 21 asset, and there are \$50 million -- 50 million
- 22 barrels of proved reserves associated with the
- 23 asset, typically we would depreciate two dollars
- 24 for every barrel produced by that asset. The
- 25 calculation is slightly more complex in that there 0021
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 is a differentiation between proved developed and
- 3 proved undeveloped reserve, but by and large, the
- 4 driver of depreciation is the total proved
- 5 reserves recorded against a given asset, and that
- 6 drives the calculation of depreciation, which
- 7 ultimately feeds into the net income calculation
- 8 for the fiscal unit.
- 9 Q Thank you. Directing your attention
- 10 specifically to late 2000, I believe you stated
- 11 that that was the time when you first started with
- 12 Investor Relations.
- 13 A That's correct. December 2000.
- 14 Q What position did you initially hold
- 15 with Investor Relations?
- 16 A As the head of Group Investor Relations,
- 17 I was responsible for all Investor Relations
- 18 activity around the world.
- 19 Q Could you please briefly describe for me
- 20 your duties and responsibilities a little more
- 21 fully in that position.
- A Okay. I -- firstly, I reported to the
- 23 CFO at the time, Steven Hodge, and I was
- 24 responsible for all communications with investors,
- 25 current or potential, in Shell Transport and 0022
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 Trading and Royal Dutch, and any of the markets in
- 3 which they traded or any investor community who
- 4 might potentially invest in either of those

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 14 of 200 PageID:

- 5 securities.
- 6 I was responsible for regular
- 7 communications in terms of Quarterly Results
- 8 Announcements. I was responsible for some of the
- 9 regulatory announcements such as 6-Ks, Stock
- 10 Exchange releases that were made when an event
- 11 took place that required such a release. I was
- 12 responsible for the marketing and communications
- 13 plan and program by which the company communicated
- 14 with investors, both proactive and reactive. And
- 15 I was responsible for ensuring that executives
- 16 within the company were briefed on the market, on
- 17 developments in the market, on concerns that
- 18 investors had, and that meant that I was quite
- 19 involved in issues such as strategy discussions
- 20 and Business Plan development over that period.
- 21 Q Now, excuse me. When you say that you
- 22 were responsible for providing management with
- 23 feedback from the market, who specifically are you
- 24 talking about in terms of management?
- 25 A Primarily Sir Philip Watts, Judith 0023
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 Boynton. I mentioned Steven Hodge when I first
- 3 arrived, in December 2000. Judith arrived in --
- 4 and she took over formally in September 2001, so
- 5 for most of my period in Investor Relations I
- 6 reported to Judy. And Sir Philip took over as
- 7 Chairman of CMD in June 2001, so again for most of
- 8 my period Sir Philip was the Chairman of CMD. He
- 9 was the main contact with the markets. So they
- 10 were my main individual contacts, but I also had a
- 11 role in broader sharing of information with
- 12 people, heads of Strategy, the heads of the
- 13 Business Units such as EP or Downstream, their
- 14 planners and particularly their finance
- 15 representatives.
- 16 Q During the period that you were at IR,
- 17 who was the head of EP?
- 18 A Initially it was Sir Philip Watts, as he
- 19 was then, until June of 2001, and then that month
- 20 he was replaced by Walter van der Vijver.
- 21 Q Now, in terms of the organization of

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 15 of 200 PageID:

- 22 Investor Relations, did you have any direct 23852
- 23 reports, meaning people who reported to you?
- A Yes. We had a small team of ten people,
- 25 and we ran three offices, and I had three senior 0024
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 individuals report to me, which, when I first, uh,
- 3 first arrived, were Michael Harrop, who was based
- 4 in London who was responsible for the U.K. and
- 5 Republic of Ireland, all investors in those
- 6 countries. I had -- I'm struggling. I can't
- 7 remember his name. Jan, in the Netherlands, who
- 8 was shortly after replaced by Bart van der
- 9 Steenstraten, who was based in The Hague. My mind
- 10 has gone blank as to Jan's surname. Bart van der
- 11 Steenstraten was based in The Hague in the
- 12 Netherlands, and he was responsible for all
- 13 investors based in Continental Europe, and Dave
- 14 Sexton or David Sexton was based in New York, and
- 15 he was responsible for communication with
- 16 investors based in North America, both the U.S.
- 17 and Canada.
- We also dealt with some Japanese
- 19 investors. Primarily we dealt with them in
- 20 London. They had small teams, and Dave Sexton
- 21 ultimately had one supporting analyst and an
- 22 assistant in New York. Mike had between two and
- 23 three supporting analysts based in London, because
- 24 London was the head office for the activity, and
- 25 London was where we did all the regulatory 0025
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 reporting, such as the quarterly results, and any
- 3 contribution to the annual filings were
- 4 coordinated out of London. And we had one analyst
- 5 in The Hague.
- 6 Q I believe you indicated that these
- 7 individuals, Mr. Harrop, Mr. van der Steenstraten
- 8 and Mr. Sexton, were responsible for
- 9 communications with investors. Could you please
- 10 elaborate on what it is you mean by responsible
- 11 for communications with investors.
- 12 A Each of them would be the first contact.

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 16 of 200 PageID:

- 13 for any questions that an investor might have 23853
- 14 about the companies, it's complex, and listing
- 15 with two companies forming a single group with
- 16 listings in different countries, but typically
- 17 investors were looking at the overall performance
- 18 of the Royal Dutch/Shell Group of Companies and
- 19 the questions -- any questions they had on
- 20 performance or events affecting the company,
- 21 events in the market, changes in oil price, for
- 22 example, questions would come into one of the
- 23 three offices, and any U.S.-based investor would
- 24 contact the New York office, and a European-based
- 25 investor would contact The Hague, so first point 0026
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 of contact.
- 3 Secondly, proactive communications
- 4 around, for example, Quarterly Results
- 5 Announcement, where any of the three individuals
- 6 would be tasked with proactive contact with
- 7 investors, either direct with the investment
- 8 company or with sell side research analysts around
- 9 those events, so proactive contact, typically on
- 10 the telephone or maintaining general contact
- 11 through regular meetings with effectively the
- 12 important opinion formers in the market.
- 13 And lastly, they were tasked with
- 14 arranging events, communication events within
- 15 their own market, aligned with the Global
- 16 Communications Plan or the Marketing Plan, which
- 17 was a roll-in plan that I maintained in London,
- 18 agreed with Judy and Phil about the communication
- 19 strategy and the key events, the key communication
- 20 requirements, usually on a look-forward basis
- 21 between three and nine months, maybe up to 12
- 22 months, as to when we would visit certain
- 23 locations, when executives would meet with
- 24 investors. And for example, if we planned a
- 25 presentation in the United States, we would 0027
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 typically meet with investors around that meeting
- 3 or that presentation, and Dave Sexton would make

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 17 of 200 PageID: 4 those arrangements. That was his relationship 23854

- 5 with the U.S.-based investors, and he would
- 6 arrange the meetings and arrange all of the
- communication around a particular event, and that
- 8 was done basically on three different markets,
- 9 given that the markets had quite different
- 10 characteristics.
- 11 Q Now, with respect to the Global Strategy
- 12 Plan, in addition to logistics -- for example,
- site visitations, dates, et cetera -- were -- did
- 14 that plan include substantive issues or points or
- information that Shell wanted to communicate to
- 16 the markets?
- 17 MR. SMITH: Objection to form.
- 18 THE WITNESS: Typically the plan would
- 19 look at, first of all, as I mentioned earlier,
- 20 what is the current state of the company in the
- 21 market, what are the current concerns of
- 22 investors, what are the questions they are asking,
- 23 what are the competitors doing. So it was
- externally focused. What are the typical events
- 25 in the external market or events within Shell, 0028
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- such as a major investment decision, that we
- 3 expect to happen over a period; and how should we
- 4 best manage the communication process, both in
- 5 content, so yes, we did look at specific issues
- 6 whether they were of concern to the market, and
- also in processes to which markets had different
- 8 specific concerns, which markets had we not been
- 9 making as much impact as we would have wished.
- 10 That's essentially a Marketing Plan.
- 11 BY MR. MACFALL:
- 12 Q Did that Global Strategy Plan make
- allowances for the different geographic regions
- you described in terms of presentation? By that I
- mean the United States, Continental Europe and the
- 16 U.K.
- 17 Yes, it did. Three very different
- markets in terms of the way companies communicated
- to the market, the type of concerns, the type of
- investors in the market, and where they perceived

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 18 of 200 PageID:

- 21 value to be in the company. The securities ar 23855
- 22 primarily listed in London and Amsterdam, and the
- 23 price for all of the securities associated with
- 24 the Royal Dutch/Shell Group of Companies is very
- 25 firmly set in the London market. It is set there 0029
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 because that is where the major shareholders are,
- 3 that is where the major trading takes place, that
- 4 is where the major opinion-formers on the
- 5 performance of the company in terms of the City of
- 6 London and the research analysts sit.
- 7 Shell and BP constitute then I think
- 8 about something like 13, 14 percent of the FTSE
- 9 Index, FTSE 100 Index. It's a similar percentage
- 10 today but slightly higher today at unification.
- 11 So any U.K. investor has to have an opinion on
- 12 those two companies. Also, any investor who is
- 13 making a choice about what they can invest in will
- 14 not go long on both BP and Shell, because then
- 15 they will be overweighted, overexposed to the U.K.
- 16 Index.
- 17 So not only was the price set in London,
- 18 but it was very sensitive to issues between Shell
- 19 and BP. It was very difficult for a long-term
- 20 investor with a large holding to favor both
- 21 companies, because it increased that portfolio
- 22 risk and exposure to one industry. So that was
- 23 clearly the focus, and the U.K. market would not
- 24 just be on the strength of the company, but it
- 25 would be on the issues that impacted people's 0030
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 perceptions of BP and Shell. That is where we
- 3 differentiate. We couldn't make a difference to
- 4 people's view of the Oil and Gas sector. It was
- 5 difficult to make in-roads into that prospectus on
- 6 the major multi-nationals versus the mid caps.
- 7 Therefore, the focus was very much Shell versus
- 8 BP.
- 9 Continental Europe investors tend to
- 10 have what we would term a longer time frame, a
- 11 longer, a mindset, a different mindset. They were

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 19 of 200 PageID:

- 12 very much focused on strategy and much less 23856
- 13 focused on quarterly results, so in Continental
- 14 Europe we could -- the only discussions I had on
- 15 long-term environmental performance and renewable
- 16 energy opportunities while I was in Investor
- 17 Relations re Continental Europe, and that was a
- 18 reflection of the fact that large investors in
- 19 Scandinavia or in Germany or the Netherlands place
- a higher premium on certain types of activities by 20
- 21 energy companies.
- 22 The Continental Europe, the main
- 23 competition was Total, a French company, and BP,
- 24 and therefore again you ensure that you are
- pressing the right buttons from an investor 25
- 0031
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- perspective when talking to them in terms of
- competitive positioning against those two
- 4 companies.
- 5 For the U.S., the U.S. itself is by far
- 6 the largest market in terms of available capital,
- but as a non-U.S. company we were competing
- against -- the competition was much tougher, so to
- have a voice that would be heard, you needed to
- 10 target investors perhaps with more choice. In the
- 11 U.K. there are only a certain number of investors,
- 12 and similarly in Continental Europe. The U.S. is
- 13 a much larger market, so we had to be more
 - selective in looking to talk to people who were
- potential buyers and not wasting our time and
- effort where that was not a possibility. 16
- 17 U.S. investors had their highest focus
- 18 on the quarterly results and are much more
- 19 analytical than European investors, so numbers
- 20 mattered to U.S. investors more than the European,
- and typically large U.S. investors have a longer 21
- 22 time horizon than the U.K., and therefore you're
- always looking to appeal to people who will keep,
- buy and hold the stock for a significant period of
- 25 time. Clearly our main competitors in the U.S. 0032
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- market in our own sector were Exxon, Chevron,

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 20 of 200 PageID:

- 3 Conoco, plus their various offshoots, Texaco, 23857
- 4 Phillips. BP and Total also are competitors here,
- 5 because they were an alternative investment for a
- 6 U.S. investor who was interested in non-U.S.-based
- 7 oil and gas companies, large oil and gas, but the
- 8 U.S. market has also much more competition from
- 9 other large caps or other major capitalized
- 10 companies, so we're also in competition with GE,
- 11 Microsoft, much less so in Europe where people are
- 12 more sector-focused.
- So given that we knew investors had a
- 14 different perspective -- there was also the issue
- 15 that U.S. investors very rarely looked at the
- 16 value of the business outside North America, and
- 17 therefore any communications inside North America
- 18 would have an element focused on our Business
- 19 inside North America, a much greater element than
- 20 our global presentations. So the U.S., while
- 21 being important to our other investors, was just
- 22 one country, whereas to a U.S. investor it's "the"
- 23 country, the domestic versus foreign split.
- Q Now, with regard to United States, with
- 25 United States investors, did those communications 0033
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 also focus on Shell's global operations or
- 3 operations outside North America?
- 4 A Yes. They would always talk about the
- 5 global position. Quite frequently a third to
- 6 50 percent of the content would focus on North
- 7 American operations, whereas typically for a
- 8 global presentation it may be somewhere from zero
- 9 to 15 percent of the presentation, depending on
- 10 the global investor concerns.
- 11 Q Directing your attention specifically to
- 12 the 2001 to 2003 time frame, do you recall the
- 13 approximate breakdown of investment by investors
- 14 in the United States versus investors in
- 15 Continental Europe versus investors in the U.K.?
- MR. SMITH: Objection to form.
- 17 THE WITNESS: When I first took over, we
- 18 had little or no direct information about current
- 19 holders of Shell stock. We didn't do market

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 21 of 200 PageID:

- 20 analysis in terms of taking -- doing research, 23858
- 21 regular research on who was currently holding the
- 22 stocks. The U.S. market is relatively easy and
- 23 transparent, the U.K. slightly less so, and the
- 24 Continental European market where they were
- 25 primarily holders of Royal Dutch bearer shares 0034
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 listed on the Amsterdam Exchange, and bearer
- 3 shares meaning you don't have to identify
- 4 yourself, so fundamentally it was very difficult
- 5 to identify shareholders in Royal Dutch trading on
- 6 the Amsterdam Exchange.
- 7 To the best of our knowledge at the
- 8 time, the total percentage of shares held in the
- 9 U.S. was between 25 and 30 percent. At the time
- 10 also, Royal Dutch Petroleum was a full member of
- 11 the Standard & Poore's 500 index, which meant that
- 12 index funds investing in the United States were
- 13 typically based in and investing in the United
- 14 States would hold some Royal Dutch/Shell as part
- 15 of their Index fund.
- In July 2002 the S&P changed their
- 17 requirement for membership of the Index to exclude
- 18 any companies that were primarily listed and
- 19 traded outside the United States, so Royal Dutch
- 20 was removed from the Index in the middle of 2002,
- 21 after which we saw, as you might expect, some
- 22 flowback of stock held to Europe. The percentage
- 23 fell to be, we believe, between 20 and 25 percent,
- 24 maybe lower than 20 percent over a period, bearing
- 25 in mind always that some of the bearer shares who 0035
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 we could not identify may have been based in the
- 3 United States.
- 4 So our main source of information, we
- 5 did set up market intelligence through Thompson
- 6 Financial. We also did a one-off survey of
- 7 holders by a company called Taylor Rafferty that
- 8 helped us to identify in a much better way who
- 9 were our current shareholders and where they were,
- 10 and we maintained that on a monthly basis until

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 22 of 200 PageID:

- 11 I -- until after I left Investor Relations. So we23859
- 12 started off above 25 percent. We ended up
- 13 somewhere probably around 20 percent over that
- 14 period.
- 15 BY MR. MACFALL:
- 16 Q Okay. Am I correct that the loss of
- 17 approximately five percent of the investors in the
- 18 United States as a consequence of Royal Dutch's
- 19 exclusion from the S&P 500 Index was primarily a
- 20 result of the loss of investors whose investment
- 21 decisions were keyed into the S&P 500 Index; is
- 22 that correct?
- 23 MR. SMITH: Objection to form.
- 24 THE WITNESS: That was our
- 25 interpretation of the facts as we saw them,

- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 because there's no way we could tie everybody's
- 3 transactions. It was an approximate loss at the
- 4 time, and in fact, I think the actual loss was
- 5 more than that over a longer period of time,
- 6 because many of the non-index funds in the U.S.
- 7 would actually track their performance against an
- 8 index and therefore probably held Royal Dutch as a
- 9 hedge against the Index itself for their own
- 10 performance. And once that link was broken, there
- 11 was less incentive for them to hold Royal Dutch as
- 12 well, so I think over time it probably led to a
- 13 greater reduction, but that's a personal opinion
- 14 based on the facts that we saw.
- 15 BY MR. MACFALL:
- 16 Q At that time, approximately July of
- 17 2002, did Shell embark on any strategy in order to
- 18 compensate for the loss of those investors in the
- 19 United States?
- A It was around about that time, not
- 21 necessarily pursuant to, we looked at our, the
- 22 holdings we could identify in the U.S. retail
- 23 investor sector, a very large sector in which we
- 24 felt, on analysis, we were underrepresented and
- 25 that there was potential to market the stock into 0037
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 23 of 200 PageID:

- the U.S. retail investor sector. Now, one of ou²³⁸⁶⁰
- 3 primary competitors, Exxon, is very highly
- 4 represented in that sector and is a not dissimilar
- 5 type of stock. We felt that we should have a good
- 6 opportunity, because it was a very large and
- 7 liquid market.
- Q Did Shell undertake any actions in order 8
- 9 to become more active in the retail sector?
- 10 Firstly, we recruited an individual into
- 11 the New York office who helped to develop
- 12 materials to communicate with brokers who
- 13 typically communicated ultimately to the retail
- 14 investors, and we held various communication
- 15 events that were targeted primarily at the
- 16 brokers, who would then communicate down into the
- 17 retail sector, but obviously, if it was a webcast
- 18 type communication, retail investors could listen
- 19 in direct as well, so yes, we developed a
- 20 marketing program targeted at U.S. retail
- investors. 21
- 22 Q As part of that retail marketing
- 23 program, did Shell increase the number of
- one-on-one meetings between senior management and
- 25 investors or potential investors in the United 0038
- 1
- SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- States?
- 3 MR. SMITH: I just want to make sure
- we're clear about the time frame. We're still
- 5 talking about after the removal from the S&P 500?
- MR. MACFALL: That's correct. 6
- 7 MR. SMITH: Okay.
- 8 THE WITNESS: Well, strike that truth,
- no, because one-on-one meetings with investors,
- 10 with retail investors would not be very efficient
- 11 use of management time. You communicate to retail
- 12 investors through brokers, essentially, and
- 13 through -- if you hype mass market communications
- 14 techniques such as materials available from the
- 15 website mail shots, the one-on-one meetings were
- 16 typically with large investors, Fidelity, Putnam,
- State Street, and they were pretty much held at
- the same level, following the exclusion from the

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 24 of 200 PageID:

- 19 S&P. 23863
- 20 BY MR. MACFALL:
- 21 Q Now I'd like to go back to some of the
- 22 types of communications that Shell had with the
- 23 market, and I believe you mentioned quarterly
- 24 announcements; is that correct?
- 25 A That's correct.
- 0039
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 Q Could you please describe for me what
- 3 that was.
- 4 A A Quarterly Results Announcement is --
- 5 technically it is roughly a 20-page document
- 6 reporting the financial results of the prior three
- 7 months. Our quarters are the calendar quarters.
- 8 They're from January to March, April to June and
- 9 so on, and typically four weeks after the end of
- 10 the quarter we would make a Stock Exchange release
- 11 in the London market or on the London Exchange,
- 12 simultaneously with the Amsterdam Exchange, and
- 13 this release was primarily financial figures, but
- 14 also contained supporting text narrative to
- 15 explain the results in the given period in
- 16 comparison with previous or prior periods.
- 17 That would usually be accompanied with,
- 18 depending on what time of year and the current
- 19 state of performance, either a conference call
- 20 with analysts hosted by myself or a physical
- 21 presentation, which would also be typically
- 22 webcast to analysts, hosted by either the CFO,
- 23 which would have been Steven Hodge or Judy Boynton
- 24 later, or on occasion by the Chairman of CMD, Sir
- 25 Philip Watts.
- 0040
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 Q And just going back to the actual QRA
- 3 for a moment, you indicated that it reported
- 4 financial information. Did the QRA report proven
- 5 reserves?
- 6 A No, it did not.
- 7 Q Do you recall if the QRA reported --
- 8 withdrawn. Are you familiar with the term
- 9 "Reserves Replacement Ratio"?

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 25 of 200 PageID:

10 A Yes, I am.

- Q Could you please describe for me your
- 12 understanding of that term.
- 13 A Reserves Replacement Ratio is, for any
- 14 given period, equal to the number of new additions
- 15 to proved reserves, reported proved reserves,
- 16 divided by the production in the same period.
- 17 Q Do you recall if Shell reported its
- 18 Reserves Replacement Ratio in the QRAs?
- 19 A Within the narrative, typically for a
- 20 fourth quarter QRA, there would be a reference to
- 21 the Reserves Replacement Ratio for the previous
- 22 year, although this was not a regulatory
- 23 requirement to include it in that document, so I
- 24 cannot recall every single year that we've done
- 25 that explicitly. I'm just thinking typically 0041
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 we've given -- more recently we've given a range,
- 3 not a specific figure.
- 4 Q When you say "more recently," what
- 5 period --
- 6 A Since 2004.
- 7 Q Do you recall if Discounted Cash Flow
- 8 was reported in the QRAs?
- 9 A The standardized measure?
- 10 Q Yes.
- 11 A No, it was not reported in the QRAs.
- 12 Q Are you familiar with the term "Return
- 13 On Average Capital Employed"?
- 14 A Yes, I am.
- 15 Q Could you please explain for me your
- 16 understanding of that term.
- 17 A Simply, that's the net income divided by
- 18 the capital employed at the beginning and end of
- 19 the period, the average across the period. That's
- 20 a simple definition. There's slightly more
- 21 nuances to it if you wish to calculate it from a
- 22 given set of figures.
- 23 Q Is the ROACE or the Return On Average
- 24 Capital Employed something that Shell reported in
- 25 its QRAs?
- 0042

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 26 of 200 PageID:

- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006 23863
- A Q1, 2 and 3 reporting, typically not.
- 3 For Q4 it would be in the narrative and possibly
- 4 in some of the tables for the QRA. I'd have to
- 5 say I don't recall exactly what we would include.
- 6 It may not have been the same from year to year.
- 7 Q Do you know who was responsible for
- 8 drafting the QRAs?
- 9 A Michael Harrop, when he reported to me,
- 10 and from -- in other words, one of my team, and
- 11 from December 2002 Michael was replaced by Gerard
- 12 Paulides with the same role and responsibility.
- 13 They drafted the QRA under my guidance.
- 14 Q And when you say under your guidance,
- 15 could you please describe for me more fully your
- 16 involvement in the preparation of the QRAs.
- 17 A I mentioned the QRAs in two sections.
- 18 There is a narrative and there is a set of data.
- 19 The data was prepared by the Group Reporting
- 20 function, a small team based in London. All
- 21 financial statements would come through there with
- 22 auditors normal financial reporting process.
- 23 Based on those data, Mike and then Gerard would
- 24 prepare a first draft of what they believed should
- 25 be in the QRA for that period.

- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 The prime purpose of the QRA, the
- 3 narrative, was to communicate an explanation for
- 4 Business drivers that were impacting the results
- 5 to enable investors to understand what had driven
- 6 the earnings, the cash generation and the balance
- 7 sheet for the period. So they were looking for
- 8 explanations. They, in turn, worked with each of
- 9 the primary Businesses. We had four primary
- 10 Businesses: Exploration & Production, Gas and
- 11 Power, Oil Products and Chemicals. So they worked
- 12 with the finance contacts in each of the
- 13 Businesses to help draft the narrative, and they
- 14 would bring in events that had happened, new
- 15 acreage, drilling success or whatever there
- 16 happened to be.
- 17 That draft would then be discussed with

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 27 of 200 PageID:

- 18 myself. We would make amendments, we would make amendments, we would make amendments.
- 19 it back into the Businesses for their comments.
- 20 because typically it's a very small group of
- 21 people involved, so two, maybe three people in a
- 22 given Business. We would get agreement with the
- 23 Business, and then the final draft would be
- 24 presented to both the Group Controller, the Group
- 25 Treasurer as it was then, and the CFO, so

0044

- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 ultimately the CFO was the owner in the company,
- 3 and with support from the CFO it would then be
- 4 sent to what was then the CMD.
- 5 Typically they would review that the
- 6 Tuesday before the results, which were on a
- 7 Thursday, always released on a Thursday morning,
- 8 and on Wednesday the Board would meet or
- 9 effectively what was called then "The Conference,"
- 10 which was both Boards, the Board of Royal
- 11 Dutch/Shell Transport, and then they would be
- 12 appraised of the release, and very occasionally
- 13 they would have a comment to make a change to the
- 14 QRA release, so that was the process, and I was
- 15 ultimately driving that process.
- 16 On those rare occasions when the Boards
- 17 had a comment, would that have been to the
- 18 narrative portion of the QRA?
- 19 A Correct.
- 20 Q To whom would they communicate those
- 21 comments?
- A The Board?
- 23 O Yes.
- 24 A They would communicate them immediately
- 25 back to me.

- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 Q I take it then that you would effect --
- 3 well, what action, if any, would you take in
- 4 response to a Board comment?
- 5 A I would do as I was asked.
- 6 Q Do you recall any specific instances of
- 7 the Boards providing you with comments to the
- 8 QRAs?

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 28 of 200 PageID:

- 9 A I remember one specific instance aroun 28865
- 10 Q4 2002, which would have been in February 2003, I
- 11 had in feedback on some of the narrative then.
- 12 Q Do you remember specifically the topics
- 13 that that feedback concerned?
- 14 A It was associated with production
- 15 growth.
- 16 Q Do you have any more specific
- 17 recollection? I mean can you describe any more
- 18 specifically for me what those comments involved?
- 19 A The QRA, as drafted, sometimes contained
- 20 forward-looking statements with appropriate
- 21 provisos at random but expectations either for
- 22 industry developments or for the performance of
- 23 the company, and it is a Stock Exchange release,
- 24 and therefore if you're making a projection about
- 25 future production growth, we would take -- we 0046
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 would put the statements into the Stock Exchange
- Release, as that is the primary file document, and
- 4 we would then later communicate on them.
- 5 So at the end of that particular year,
- 6 end of 2002, we had been looking at future
- 7 production projections, and the wording that we
- 8 were seeking to achieve was not accepted by the
- 9 Board, and they made some changes.
- 10 Q Okay. And I don't mean to belabor the
 - point, although I am. Do you recall specifically
- 12 what the issue of the wording was?
- 13 A We, we were proposing rather less
- 14 specificity around future production growth
- 15 targets. They wanted to include a more specific
- 16 target for production growth.
- 17 Q Whether you say "a more specific
- 18 target," are you talking about a quantification of
- 19 the production target?
- A Yes.
- 21 Q Now, I believe you also stated that in
- 22 conjunction with the QRAs, there were
- 23 presentations made, either a press conference,
- 24 teleconference, or a more formal -- or a live
- 25 physical meeting; is that correct?

0047

1

- SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 A That is correct. All of those could
- 3 take place: Press conference, teleconference, and
- 4 a physical conference with investors and analysts.
 - Q Dealing with the first of those, press
- 6 conferences, were such conferences held in
- 7 connection with each QRA?
- 8 A Typically, no. It was just done in the
- 9 mid-year and at the end of the year, and that's
- 10 reflected U.K. market practice. It's not a
- 11 requirement in the U.K. to report quarterly
- 12 financial results. It's just a requirement to
- 13 report six-monthly. And the customer practice in
- 14 the London market is for the Chief Executive or
- 15 the CFO to hold a press conference in releasing
- 16 the mid-year results and the full-year results, so
- 17 we tended to follow that practice.
- The press conferences would be held in
- 19 London, by exception they would be held in The
- 20 Hague, and sometimes simultaneously in London and
- 21 The Hague, depending on the needs of the moment.
- 22 And they were organized by our press team, but all
- 23 the material, all the messages, all of the
- 24 preparation of the executives would be coordinated
- 25 as one exercise by myself and the head of Media 0048
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 Relations.
- 3 Q I was about to ask: Who was the head of
- 4 Media Relations during the period of 2001 and
- 5 2004?
- 6 A It was a lady by the name of Mary Jo
- 7 Jacobi. Her actual title was a bit more broad,
- 8 but she drove the strategy in the communication
- 9 approach for external relationships other than
- 10 investors, which included the media.
- 11 Q I believe you indicated that the CFO
- 12 would normally speak at a press conference; is
- 13 that correct?
- 14 A Would usually be there, quite often
- 15 speak, but if the conference was in the
- 16 Netherlands, it would be hosted by whoever was the

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 30 of 200 PageID:

- 17 President of Royal Dutch at the time, which 23867
- 18 throughout this period was Jeroen van der Veer,
- 19 and the conference was typically held in Dutch as
- 20 well, not in English. In the U.K., if Sir Philip
- 21 Watts was present, Sir Philip would lead the
- 22 presentation, and usually Judy would be at the
- 23 presentation, and maybe she talked to the
- 24 financial results and answered the financial
- 25 questions.

- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 Q I take it by your answer then that
- 3 Mr. Watts would not participate in all press
- 4 conferences regarding QRAs.
- 5 A Not all press conferences, no. He
- 6 didn't participate in the Dutch, and I think there
- 7 were one or two in the period where Judy would
- 8 lead.
- 9 Q Now, were members of the financial media
- 10 and other media invited to these press
- 11 conferences?
- 12 A The financial media, yes. We also
- 13 typically held a teleconference before a physical
- 14 press conference that was held at the wire
- 15 services: Bloomberg, Reuters and AFP, and other
- 16 news services. We would hold a brief 30-minute
- 17 teleconference immediately after we had issued the
- 18 results to the Stock Exchange, the purpose there
- 19 being to give an opportunity for the wire
- 20 journalists to ask questions of -- again typically
- 21 it was either Sir Philip or Judy or both, to ask
- 22 questions of them so they had a better
- 23 understanding to put the stories out on the wires,
- 24 because on any given results announcements of the
- 25 day, the wires tend to set the tone for the day 0050
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 for media reporting. And that was usually about
- 3 an hour, 90 minutes before the press conference
- 4 itself.
- 5 Q And those wire services typically
- 6 disseminated articles concerning Shell's results
- 7 worldwide, correct?

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 31 of 200 PageID:

- 8 MR. SMITH: Objection to form; lack of 3868
- 9 foundation.
- 10 BY MR. MACFALL:
- 11 Q Withdrawn. Do you -- are you familiar
- 12 with the scope of -- withdrawn. Let me try this
- 13 again. Did the wire services periodically or
- 14 typically write articles concerning the results
- 15 announced by Shell?
- MR. SMITH: Objection to form.
- 17 THE WITNESS: They always, we hoped,
- 18 wrote an article about the quarterly results and
- 19 the performance of the company.
- 20 BY MR. MACFALL:
- 21 Q As part of your market monitoring
- 22 activities as head of IR, did you review those
- 23 articles?
- A Not all of them, but I would typically
- 25 follow Bloomberg's and other news services that 0051
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 were notified to me as having carrying a
- 3 particularly interesting article.
- 4 Q Are you aware of whether those articles
- 5 were disseminated globally over the wire at the
- 6 same time?
- 7 A I guess I was only following them from
- 8 the U.K., and so it would be an assumption from me
- 9 that they would be available globally by whatever
- 10 mechanism the wire services would use. I was only
- 11 personally following them in the U.K.
- 12 Q Now, with regard to the press
- 13 conferences that were conducted concerning the
- 14 QRAs, you indicated that members of the financial
- 15 media attended those conferences. Who determined
- 16 who to invite to those conferences?
- 17 A The team reporting to Mary Jo Jacobi.
- 18 Q Could you please describe the format of
- 19 those conferences for me.
- A Just to be clear, we're talking about
- 21 the press conferences, not the investor or the
- 22 analyst conferences, which were a quite separate
- 23 event?
- Q That's correct.

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 32 of 200 PageID:

- A I guess if it were U.K.-based, we would 3869 0052
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 have somewhere between 20 and 30 journalists. We
- 3 would either rent a room in a London hotel or
- 4 other conference venture or invite the journalists
- 5 to Shell Center, the head office in London. Phil
- 6 or Judy would start with their 10-, 15-minute
- 7 presentation on the results. It would have
- 8 somewhere between seven and ten slides, simple
- 9 description or explanation of the results,
- 10 followed by an open Q&A. There would usually be a
- 11 telephone call-in option, such that journalists
- 12 who could not attend physically could also listen
- 13 and also ask questions, and the whole event would
- 14 last for maybe an hour.
- 15 Q Now, with regard to the presentation on
- 16 the results, I take it that -- withdrawn. Did
- 17 Mr. Watts and Ms. Boynton utilize prepared
- 18 statements during that portion of the
- 19 presentation?
- A Yes, they did.
- 21 Q Who was responsible for drafting those
- 22 prepared statements?
- 23 A Ultimate responsibility for the press
- 24 statements would be with Mary Jo, but in fact,
- 25 they were extracts from, although very similar to, 0053
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 the statements that would be used by either Sir
- 3 Philip or Judy or myself in investor
- 4 communications, so it was basically one
- 5 preparation process, and Mary Jo's team would --
- 6 "dumb down" would be maybe the wrong word, but
- 7 they would make it more understandable to
- 8 journalists relative to the investors who are
- 9 shall we say more liberate in their interests.
- MR. FERRARA: Tim, we've been going for
- 11 a little more than an hour. Would it be
- 12 convenient to take a brief break?
- 13 MR. MACFALL: If I could just finish up
- 14 with a couple more questions.
- MR. FERRARA: Sure.

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 33 of 200 PageID:

- 16 BY MR. MACFALL:
 - Q Do you recall if journalists from the
- 18 financial media in the United States typically
- 19 attended the QRA or the Quarterly Result press
- 20 conferences?

- A Almost never, because they were held at
- 22 9:00 in the morning, and that was 4:00 a.m. in New
- 23 York. What we did have is the Bureau
- 24 representative usually from the "Wall Street
- 25 Journal" would be present, but the London Bureau 0054
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 as based in London. I don't recall too many
- 3 others. "New York Times" was occasionally
- 4 represented.
- 5 Q Now, when you say "represented," do you
- 6 mean that those individuals were physically
- 7 present at the press conference?
- 8 A Or they would call in. They were always
- 9 invited, but they didn't always attend.
- O Q Now, just for clarification, because I
- 11 was actually asking specifically with regard to
- 12 physical attendance at the conferences, but you
- 13 may have answered this: Do you recall if members
- 14 of the financial media in the United States
- 15 typically participated by telephone in those press
- 16 conferences?
- 17 A Journalists based in the United States,
- 18 almost never, from my memory. I don't even
- 19 remember, because it wasn't my invitation list.
- 20 If we would bother to invite them, we would just
- 21 invite the London Bureau because of the time and
- 22 distance.
- MR. MACFALL: Why don't we go off the
- 24 record.
- 25 THE VIDEOGRAPHER: We're going off the
- 0055
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 record. The time is 11:16 a.m.
- 3 (Whereupon, a short recess was taken.)
- 4 THE VIDEOGRAPHER: We are back on the
- 5 record. The time is 11:42 a.m.
- 6 BY MR. MACFALL:

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 34 of 200 PageID:

- 7 Q Mr. Henry, prior to the break we were 23871
- 8 talking about the press conferences that were held
- 9 in conjunction with the QRAs. I believe you
- 10 stated that members of the financial media from
- 11 the United States were invited but with certain
- 12 exceptions which you specified usually did not
- 13 attend. I'd like to ask: Do you recall
- 14 specifically which members of the United States
- 15 financial media were invited to those press
- 16 conferences?
- 17 MR. SMITH: Objection to form and
- 18 foundation.
- 19 THE WITNESS: To the best of my
- 20 knowledge, it would be the London-based Bureau of
- 21 Representatives of the "Wall Street Journal," the
- 22 "New York Times." And just to be clear, the same
- 23 was true about the wire services. It was the
- 24 London representatives. All reports that came out
- 25 following any of the discussions, quarterly 0056
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 results or otherwise, would come from the London
- 3 office; for example, Bloomberg. We never, in my
- 4 experience, spoke to U.S.-based journalists or
- 5 financial media.
- 6 BY MR. MACFALL:
- 7 Q Are you aware if representatives from
- 8 "Investors Business Daily" was invited to the
- 9 press conference?
- 10 A No.
- 11 Q No, you're not aware or no, they were
- 12 not invited?
- 13 A I'm not aware.
- 14 Q And I believe you, uh, you mentioned
- 15 Bloomberg. That would have been the London
- 16 representative of Bloomberg, correct?
- 17 A Correct.
- 18 Q Okay. How about Thompson's; do you
- 19 recall if anybody from Thompson's was normally
- 20 invited?
- 21 A I don't recall if Thompson's were
- 22 invited. The only relationship I had with
- 23 Thompson's that I was aware of was, in fact, the

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 35 of 200 PageID:

- 24 shareholder information that they started to 23872
- 25 gather for us during 2002.

0057

- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 Q Are you aware if a representative of
- 3 Reuters was invited to the press conferences?
- A I can't say specifically, but typically
- 5 we would invite them to the teleconference that
- 6 would be held before the press conference, and
- 7 that's the only time I would expect to talk to
- 8 them.
- 9 Q Just so I understand you, so a
- 10 representative of Reuters was, to the best of your
- 11 recollection, invited to participate in the
- 12 teleconference which occurred prior to the press
- 13 release; is that correct? I'm sorry. Prior to
- 14 the press conference regarding the QRA.
- 15 A The London-based representatives of
- 16 Reuters would be invited to join the
- 17 teleconference that would be held maybe half an
- 18 hour after the Stock Exchange Release, which was
- 19 7:30 U.K., 2:30 a.m. New York, and one hour later
- 20 for Continental Europe, the call being held at
- 21 that time so that it was before the markets opened
- 22 in Europe.
- Q How about "Business Week"; do you recall
- 24 if a representative from that organization was
- 25 invited to the press conference?

- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 A I never came across a "Business Week"
- 3 representative based in Europe, sir. Let's be
- 4 clear. Journalists don't get up at 2:30 in the
- 5 morning. It's simple as that.
- 6 Q How about "Forbes"?
- 7 A "Forbes," no.
- 8 Q "Fortune"?
- 9 A No.
- 10 Q Now, with regard to the representatives
- 11 from organizations based in the United States,
- 12 such as the "Wall Street Journal" and "New York
- 13 Times" and Bloomberg, why were such
- 14 representatives invited to participate in the

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 36 of 200 PageID: 15 teleconference and/or press conference? 23873 16 MR. SMITH: Objection to form and

17 foundation.

18 THE WITNESS: My understanding, bearing

- 19 in mind I always had Investor Relations, not Media
- 20 Relations, was that the "Wall Street Journal" in
- particular has a European version and has a
- 22 reporting responsibility into Europe, impacting
- 23 the European media. The financial media impacts
- 24 ultimately European investors. It was also a more
- 25 efficient way of communicating back into the U.S. 0059
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- market on the assumption that the journalists
- would file copy that was available to the "Wall
- Street Journal" when it came online in the U.S.
- 5 BY MR. MACFALL:
- Q What about the "New York Times"? 6
- The "New York Times" was a less 7
- 8 important publication for us, to be honest, as far
- as we were concerned, so I don't remember -- it
- 10 didn't have a European edition. The "New York
- 11 Times," one of the reasons it was less important
- 12 for us is it doesn't or, as far as I was aware.
- 13 didn't have a European edition.
- Q Do you know why a representative of the 14
- "New York Times" was invited to participate or to
- 16 attend the press conference?
- 17 No. Α
- 18 Q Who was it who made the decision --
- 19 withdrawn. Who was it who drew up the list of
- invitees to the press conference?
- 21 MR. SMITH: Objection to form and
- 22 foundation.
- 23 THE WITNESS: It would have been drawn
- up by a member of the team, Mary Jo Jacobi's team. 24
- 25 0060
- 1
- SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- BY MR. MACFALL:
- 3 Q With respect to Ms. Jacobi's team, I
- believe you indicated that they were responsible
- for Media Relations: is that correct?

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 37 of 200 PageID:

6 A Correct.

- 23874
- 7 Q Do you know if that team was organized
- 8 in the same way Investor Relations was? And by
- 9 that I mean by geographic regional market.
- 10 A In my time in Investor Relations, the
- 11 organization changed more than once, and at one
- 12 point we had a U.S. media representative sharing
- 13 the New York office with David Sexton, but by and
- 14 large the U.S. media activity was considerably
- 15 less than the Europe.
- Q Do you recall the name of the individual
- 17 who shared the office with Mr. Sexton?
- 18 A Michael McGary.
- 19 Q Now, with respect to the teleconferences
- 20 that were conducted after the final of the QRA but
- 21 before the press conference, who was
- 22 responsible -- withdrawn. Were representatives of
- 23 various financial media invited to participate?
- A Sorry. Were representatives --
- 25 Q Yes.
- 0061
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 A Yes.
- 3 Q Who determined who was invited to
- 4 participate in the teleconferences?
- 5 MR. SMITH: Objection to form and
- 6 foundation.
- 7 THE WITNESS: The ultimate
- 8 responsibility would be Mary Jo Jacobi.
- 9 BY MR. MACFALL:
- 10 Q Did investor relations have any input
- 11 into the list of invitees or participants?
- 12 A Not that I can recall.
- 13 Q I know you identified Bloomberg as one
- 14 wire service that normally participated in the
- 15 teleconference. Can you identify any other
- 16 specific wire services that participated during
- 17 those teleconferences during your tenure at IR?
- 18 A Reuters and AFP were two -- I'm not sure
- 19 if it's a wire service, but it's a London-based
- 20 information service called "Breaking Views." And
- 21 I don't recall other what I would see as wire
- 22 services.

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 38 of 200 PageID:

- Q Did you participate in those
- 23875

- 24 teleconferences?
- 25 A Yes.
- 0062
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 Q What was your role in those conferences?
- 3 A My initial role was in preparing any
- 4 briefing for the executives who would actually
- 5 host the conference, including they usually began
- 6 with a two-, three-minute description of the
- 7 highlights of the results, so I would be part of
- 8 drafting those highlights. Then I would be
- 9 present in the call only if one of the presenters
- 10 needed support and typically on facts and numbers
- 11 for the questions that were coming in, and more
- 12 often than not I did not actually speak in the
- 13 call. It was only by exception that I would
- 14 speak.
- 15 Q I know you -- excuse me. Withdrawn.
- 16 You previously indicated that certain of the press
- 17 conferences conducted out of The Hague were
- 18 conducted in Dutch. Were the teleconferences
- 19 conducted in English or Dutch?
- 20 A In London, in English. In the
- 21 Netherlands it would be a mix, essentially,
- 22 because sometimes you have English-speaking
- 23 journalists or not Dutch-speaking. German
- 24 journalists, for example, may not speak Dutch, so
- 25 they tended to be a combination. I have to say 0063
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 I'm not familiar with what went on in those press
- 3 conferences, because I was usually attending the
- 4 London-based conference.
- 5 Q And just so I'm clear, the
- 6 teleconferences that preceded the actual press
- 7 conference, were those normally conducted out of
- 8 London?
- 9 A Always conducted out of London.
- 10 Q I believe you stated earlier that
- 11 Mr. Watts and Ms. Boynton spoke during these
- 12 conferences on various occasions; is that correct?
- 13 A Yeah, typically one of them would do

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 39 of 200 PageID:

- 14 their three-minute introduction, and if both we 3876
- 15 present -- sometimes only one was present -- they
- 16 would choose between themselves who would answer a
- 17 particular question.
- 18 Q Besides telephonically, was the
- 19 teleconference broadcast or disseminated in any
- 20 other way?
- 21 A The teleconference was not broadcast.
- Q How about the press conference?
- A The press conference was typically
- 24 broadcast on the website, but not always. I
- 25 forget how the strategy evolved. During the 0064
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 period when I arrived, it was not. During the
- 3 period we started to webcast some of the press
- 4 conferences. This is partly as technology
- 5 evolved.
- 6 Q In or about 2003, 2004, were the press
- 7 conferences ordinarily webcast?
- A I don't recall exactly, but I would
- 9 think, based on the way things developed, most of
- 10 them would have been webcast in that period.
- 11 Q I believe you indicated that the
- 12 prepared statements -- withdrawn. I believe you
- 13 indicated that Mr. Watts and Ms. Boynton during
- 14 the teleconferences utilized prepared statements,
- 15 correct?
- 16 A That's correct.
- 17 Q And those prepared statements were
- 18 extrapolated or distilled from the narrative
- 19 portion of the QRAs; is that correct?
- 20 A Distilled from the narrative in the QRA,
- 21 but they would typically repeat the key figures,
- 22 such as the income production.
- 23 Q Now, during the preparation of the
- 24 narrative portions of the QRA, was it necessary
- 25 for Investor Relations to obtain data from the 0065
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 operating Businesses?
- 3 A Yes, it was.
- 4 Q Were there specific focal points or

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 40 of 200 PageID:

- 5 representatives or individuals -- let me try that 23877
- 6 again. Withdrawn. Were there specific
- 7 representatives designated at each of those
- 8 Businesses to act as a conduit of information for
- 9 Investor Relations?
- 10 A Yes, there were.
- 11 Q Could you please identify with respect
- 12 to each of the Businesses, to the best of your
- 13 recollection, who each of those individuals were.
- 14 A In the Exploration & Production Business
- 15 for most of my time in Investor Relations it was a
- 16 lady called Rhea Hamilton. That's Rhea, R-H-E-A.
- 17 In the Downstream or Oil Products Business it was
- 18 an individual called Malcolm Spratt. In the Gas
- 19 and Power Business it was a variety of
- 20 individuals. It changed during the period, and
- 21 similarly in Chemicals, but most of our
- 22 communication was with E&P and Oil Products, as
- 23 they are the largest, uh, largest Businesses and
- 24 the ones of most interest.
- 25 Q And when you say "the ones of most 0066
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 interest," are you referring to interest by the
- 3 financial community?
- 4 A They had the most material impact on the
- 5 financial results, so if we were looking to
- 6 explain the financial results, that is where we
- 7 would start.
- 8 Q Do you recall what position Ms. Hamilton
- 9 held at EP?
- 10 A Apart from being the focal point of
- 11 Investor Relations, which was one of her roles,
- 12 she was part of the Finance Team that was
- 13 responsible for preparing various information
- 14 reports, planning within the EP Business.
- 15 Q How about Mr. Spratt?
- 16 A He was in a similar unit in the Oil
- 17 Products Business.
- Q Just a moment ago I believe you used the
- 19 term "Upstream." Just to backtrack for purposes
- 20 of clarification, could you please describe for me
- 21 the difference between "Upstream" and

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 41 of 200 PageID:

22 "Downstream."

- 23878
- 23 A The Upstream Businesses are essentially
- 24 a resource and extraction and production Business
- 25 and include Oil and Gas up to the point at which 0067
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 that oil or gas is placed on a ship for transport
- 3 to market. The Downstream Business is typically
- 4 receipt of the ship into a distribution
- 5 infrastructure, maybe on with manufacturing
- 6 processing and sale to final customer.
- 7 Different oil companies might draw the
- 8 specific line between Upstream and Downstream
- 9 differently. Shell includes two Businesses in its
- 10 Upstream: The Exploration & Production and what
- 11 we call Gas and Power. Gas and Power is
- 12 responsible for the Liquefied Natural Gas or LNG
- 13 Supply Business, which includes liquefaction and
- 14 transport and ultimate sale into gas markets.
- 15 Some companies do not have that distinction. They
- 16 just have an Upstream Business. Depends on the
- 17 way they actually manage their own business.
- 18 Q I'd like to go back and just follow up
- 19 with something we discussed a little bit earlier.
- 20 You indicated you could recall specifically during
- 21 the QRA process or final approval process at least
- 22 one instance where the Board Conference commented
- 23 on the draft QRA. Do you recall who it was who
- 24 provided you with that comment?
- A I recall how the comment reached me, 0068
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 which was obviously from my Line Manager who would
- 3 have been present in the meeting, which was Judy
- 4 Boynton.
- 5 Q I believe you also indicated that the
- 6 Board wanted to quantify production targets; is
- 7 that correct?
- 8 A What the Board was asking specifically
- 9 was that the targets that they had effectively
- 10 just been approving in the Business Plan were
- 11 communicated to the outside world. As proposed by
- 12 the business for internal management and appraisal

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 42 of 200 PageID:

- purposes, they wished to share the specific number 13
- 14 with the outside world.
- Q Do you know why they wanted to share
- 16 that number with the outside world?
- 17 A No, I don't.
- 18 Q Did you have any discussion with
- 19 Ms. Boynton concerning her participation in the
- 20 CMD meeting at which that was discussed -- I'm
- 21 sorry -- at the conference meeting at which that
- 22 was discussed?
- A No, I didn't, not really.
- Q Now, going back again to the approximate
- 25 breakdown of investors in the United States versus 0069
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 Europe and the U.K., I believe you stated that
- 3 prior to the exclusion of Shell from the S&P 500,
- 4 that U.S. investors made up approximately
- 5 25 percent of the investors in Shell; is that
- 6 correct?
- 7 MR. SMITH: Objection to form.
- 8 THE WITNESS: What I said was that was
- 9 our understanding in Investor Relations at the
- 10 time, based on somewhat incomplete information,
- 11 incomplete because we hadn't at that stage started
- 12 the regular monthly information that we
- 13 subsequently gathered from Thompson's, and
- 14 incomplete because bearer shares we could not
- 15 identify, and so -- however we did it, so it was
- 16 based on our estimate at the time, not so much
- 17 where the shares were traded, but where the
- 18 holders might sit, but it was exactly that: Only
- 19 an estimate.
- 20 BY MR. MACFALL:
- Q Do you recall if that estimate included
- 22 U.S. purchasers or U.S. holders who purchased on
- 23 foreign markets?
- MR. SMITH: Objection to form and
- 25 foundation.
- 0070
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 THE WITNESS: I don't recall specific
- 3 numbers, but it would have potentially included

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 43 of 200 PageID:

- 4 investors of the kind that you mentioned. 2388
- 5 BY MR. MACFALL:
- 6 Q I believe you indicated that Shell
- 7 instituted a more formalized process to gauge the
- 8 number of U.S. holders vis-a-vis European holders
- 9 and U.K. holders; is that correct?
- 10 MR. SMITH: Objection to form.
- 11 THE WITNESS: It's correct that we
- 12 initiated a process during my tenure.
- 13 BY MR. MACFALL:
- 14 Q Was that in connection with the Standard
- 15 & Poore 500 exclusion of Shell?
- 16 A Not exclusively. I don't know the exact
- 17 timing, but it was around about the same time.
- Q Could you explain to me why it was that
- 19 a process was put in place to identify the number
- 20 of U.S. holders versus European holders.
- 21 MR. SMITH: Objection to form.
- THE WITNESS: The process wasn't put in
- 23 place, in the first place, just to know U.S.
- 24 versus European. I was head of what was
- 25 effectively a marketing activity, and it helped in 0071
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 any marketing activity to know where your
- 3 customers were, so it was basically market
- 4 intelligence for me to develop a communication
- 5 strategy around, particularly bearing in mind, of
- 6 course, we knew the size of the market through a
- 7 daily web and how much potential capital there
- 8 was.
- 9 BY MR. MACFALL:
- 10 O Now, prior to the time that that process
- 11 was instituted going back to the initial estimate
- 12 concerning U.S. holders, do you recall what
- 13 information that was based upon?
- 14 A Not entirely, but it was partly what
- 15 shares were traded on which exchange, so we knew
- 16 which ones were held and the ADRs were held, ST&T,
- 17 for example, or the New York ordinary shares of
- 18 our overall Dutch. And it was partly based on
- 19 what I believe had been previous one-off surveys
- 20 that had been done by my predecessor in Investor

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 44 of 200 PageID:

- 21 Relations. Michael Harrop, for example, was 48881
- 22 the role I mentioned for five years in total, so I
- 23 think he began in 1997, so he had quite some
- 24 experience in the role.
- 25 Q I'm sorry. I believe you used the term 0072
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 "one-off survey"; is that correct? Could you
- 3 please describe for me what that is.
- 4 A With Thompson's we asked them to do
- 5 every month a survey of where the holders were and
- 6 who were the big buyers and sellers, so I'd say
- 7 that was an ongoing survey. A one-off survey is
- 8 just a point in time snapshot where we were
- 9 asking -- the one we did in my tenure was with
- 10 Taylor Rafferty, a snapshot at that time of the
- 11 Royal Dutch shareholders, who was a holder at any
- 12 given date, and we didn't institute a monthly
- 13 process afterwards.
- 14 Q Now, the Taylor Rafferty survey, was
- 15 that commissioned for the same reason that you
- 16 described; basically market surveillance and
- 17 intelligence?
- 18 A Yes.
- MR. SMITH: Objection to the form.
- 20 BY MR. MACFALL:
- 21 Q Do you recall approximately when that
- 22 was done?
- A I think that was in 2001, but I could be
- 24 wrong. Could have been later, in 2002.
- Q Was that survey something that you 0073
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 requested?
- 3 A It was something that I requested.
- 4 Q Now, the Thompson surveys; were they
- 5 done on a monthly basis?
- 6 A Yes, they are, once we had initiated the
- 7 contract.
- 8 Q Were the Thompson surveys something that
- 9 you requested that they be done?
- 10 A Yes, they were.
- 11 Q Was the data from either the Taylor

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 45 of 200 PageID:

- 12 Rafferty survey or the various Thompson survey882
- 13 ever provided to members of senior management at
- 14 Shell?
- 15 A Yes, it was.
- 16 Q Now, with respect to the Taylor Rafferty
- 17 survey specifically, do you recall if that data
- 18 was provided to Shell senior management?
- 19 A I don't recall if the specific data was
- 20 provided, but some of the conclusions that we drew
- 21 from it about particularly European investors were
- 22 provided to management.
- Q Do you recall what those conclusions
- 24 were?
- 25 A That our European -- this is Continental 0074
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 European, excluding the U.K. -- that our
- 3 shareholders were much more broadly spread amongst
- 4 European countries than had previously been
- 5 thought, and that the Netherlands itself was just
- 6 one of four countries with roughly equal
- 7 shareholders.
- 8 Q Who specifically in senior management
- 9 was provided with that information?
- 10 A Would have been Judy.
- 11 Q Do you recall how that was provided to
- 12 Ms. Boynton? Was that an oral presentation or a
- 13 written report?
- 14 A Most likely an oral presentation, maybe
- 15 with one or two extracts from the report, but
- 16 that's typically how we communicated, so I can't
- 17 say specifically for that information.
- 18 Q As a general matter, did you normally
- 19 communicate with Ms. Boynton on a face-to-face
- 20 basis versus telephonically, for example?
- 21 MR. SMITH: Objection to form.
- THE WITNESS: Mostly face to face.
- 23 BY MR. MACFALL:
- Q Was Ms. Boynton's office physically
- 25 located near your office?
- 0075
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 A Yes, it was.

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 46 of 200 PageID:

- With respect to the information from the 3883
- 4 Thompson surveys, was data from those surveys
- 5 provided to senior management at Shell?
- 6 A Yes, it was.
- 7 Q Okay. Do you recall the subject matter
- 8 of the data that was provided to the Shell senior
- 9 management from those surveys?
- 10 MR. SMITH: Objection to form.
- 11 THE WITNESS: I recall two different
- 12 ways in which we used to share the data. One was,
- 13 if we took the senior executive on a road trip to
- 14 meet with investors, we would typically give a
- 15 listing of the key investors in that market and
- 16 highlight where the investors were that the
- 17 executive was meeting, where they were on that
- 18 list, and what their recent activity would have
- 19 been, whether they were a buyer or a seller.
- 20 Separate to that, we did a Quarterly Report
- 21 showing trends in terms of buyers and sellers and
- 22 movements, and that utilized the Thompson data.
- 23 And that report was sent, if I recall correctly,
- 24 to the CMD, so all of the Managing Directors and
- 25 to one or two other key contacts, which would have 0076
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 included Mary Jo Jacobi and I think would have
- 3 included the head of Planning, Planning &
- 4 Strategy.
- 5 BY MR. MACFALL:
- 6 Q Who was the head of Planning & Strategy
- 7 at that time?
- 8 A A variety when I began.
- 9 MR. SMITH: Maybe we could be clearer
- 10 about what the time frame is. Do you mean at the
- 11 time he started getting the Thompson data?
- 12 BY MR. MACFALL:
- 13 Q Yes, specifically.
- 14 A The Thompson data I think by then was a
- 15 lady called Lynn Elsenhaus.
- 16 Q Do you recall Ms. Elsenhaus' title at
- 17 the time?
- 18 A "Director of Group Strategy and Planning
- 19 and External Affairs," or something similar.

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 47 of 200 PageID:

- Q Separate and apart from providing dat&3884
- 21 from the Thompson surveys, did Investor Relations
- 22 have interaction with Ms. Elsenhaus -- I'm
- 23 sorry -- with the Director of Group Strategy &
- 24 Planning?
- A I myself had interaction with whoever 0077
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 was in that position throughout the three plus
- 3 years I was in the role. Not really -- the rest
- 4 of my team didn't, really.
- 5 Q What was the nature of your interaction?
- 6 A During a given year we follow a typical
- 7 process for planning whereby early in the year we
- 8 would conduct a strategy review of competitive
- 9 positioning, a look at whether the appraisal of
- 10 the performance of the Business as to whether it
- 11 was delivering against the stated strategy. That
- 12 would then feed into the guidelines for the
- 13 current year planning process, which would then
 - 4 feed into the preparation of the plan, which was
- 15 signed off by the end of the year.
- Lynn or whoever was in that role was
- 17 responsible for that whole process, but from an
- 18 Investor Relations perspective I would contribute
- 19 to the competitive positioning to the changes in
- 20 the industry environment. And as the plan was
- 21 being prepared in the latter part of the year, I
- 22 would have a role in terms of commenting on the
- 23 quality of the -- again from a competitive
- 24 positioning against both what we expected from
- 25 competitors, like BP and Exxon, and what we 0078
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 believed the market expected from Shell, so I was
- 3 giving feedback from market expectations.
- 4 Q What was the purpose of that report?
- 5 MR. SMITH: Objection to form.
- 6 THE WITNESS: There wouldn't necessarily
- 7 be a particular report. I could be included in a
- 8 discussion. I might sometimes do a written
- 9 comment or an e-mail. And the first phase, the
- 10 competitive positioning, we would typically

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 48 of 200 PageID:

- 11 provide something from Investor Relations about \$5
- 12 again as I mentioned I think some time ago, how
- 13 our performance was perceived in the market both
- 14 against expectations for Shell and how were the
- 15 companies performing. Quite often we would put
- 16 that in writing.
- 17 BY MR. MACFALL:
- 18 Q Was this for ultimate use in a Planning
- 19 & Strategy review? Was that a formalized report?
- 20 MR. SMITH: Objection to form.
- 21 THE WITNESS: This was a CMD-managed
- 22 process. I wasn't party to all the CMD
- 23 discussions. I was a contributor to the
- 24 documents, but typically -- I am aware that the
- 25 early part of the year there was a review of the 0079
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 competitive positioning industry developments that
- 3 would be considered by the CMD, which is the
- 4 Committee of Managing Directors, as they set
- 5 guidelines for the planning process of that year,
- 6 which may include, for example, investment levels,
- 7 and then beginning September, late September,
- 8 there would be a series of reviews at the CMD of
- 9 the plan as it was evolving against those
- 10 guidelines, and quite often I may comment on that
- 11 process as it evolved, usually with Judy more so
- 12 than with the Planning Director.
- 13 BY MR. MACFALL:
- 14 Q How were your comments communicated to
- 15 Ms. Boynton?
- 16 A Either by e-mail or verbally or, as was
- 17 previously mentioned, usually just by calling
- 18 around.
- 19 Q Now, with regard to the market
- 20 expectation issues in connection with that
- 21 planning process, what were your sources of
- 22 information?
- 23 MR. SMITH: Objection to form.
- 24 THE WITNESS: I had multiple sources of
- 25 information in putting that together. It included 0080
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 49 of 200 PageID:

- 2 statements made by the competitors, presentation886
- 3 they had made to the investors. It included
- 4 reports done by research analysts and typically
- 5 associated with an investment bank, and it
- 6 included just about every source of -- every
- 7 source of information we could access who may have
- 8 a view or opinion on the facts pertaining to the
- 9 performance of other companies, and this included
- 10 Shell staff who worked with them or in a similar
- 11 Business area; it included potentially suppliers
- 12 or customers; and it would include the media. We
- 13 built up our sources of information as well as
- 14 possible as any company would do about their
- 15 competitors, but we had, uh, we had a particular
- 16 perspective. We were one of several contributors
- 17 to that competitive positioning review. Our18 perspective was primarily what did the market
- 19 think of each company's strengths and weaknesses.
- 20 BY MR. MACFALL:
- 21 Q Do you recall if ROACE was ever
- 22 discussed in connection with Shell's competitive
- 23 position in connection with this Planning &
- 24 Strategy review process?
- A In which period?

0081

8

- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 Q During your tenure at Investor
- 3 Relations.
- 4 A In the earlier years of the tenure, yes.
- 5 Q And by that do you mean 2001, 2002?
- 6 A Yes.
- 7 Q Did that change at some point?
 - A The relative emphasis changed.
- 9 Q Was there some other metric --
- 10 withdrawn. Was Shell's Reserve Replacement Ratio
- 11 discussed during this process?
- MR. SMITH: Can we have a time frame?
- 13 BY MR. MACFALL:
- 14 Q Sure. During your tenure at IR.
- 15 A When I first joined IR, the key issues
- 16 the market was interested in were two things,
- 17 really: Return On Average Capital Employed and
- 18 production growth. The issue of Reserve

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 50 of 200 PageID:

- 19 Replacement Ratio was never mentioned by a \$\frac{1}{3}\text{887}\$
- 20 investor to me for about I would say the first 16
- 21 months, because it just was not in the mindset of
- 22 any investor at that point in time. So I don't
- 23 recall specifically if Reserve Replacement Ratio
- 24 was included in the strategy and planning
- 25 discussions earlier in the process, but if it was, 0082
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 it would have been as more of an aside or a minor
- 3 issue. Key issues were production growth and
- 4 return on capital.
- 5 Q Did there come a time when reserve
- 6 replacement became more prominent in the Planning
- 7 & Strategy review process?
- 8 MR. SMITH: Objection to form.
- 9 THE WITNESS: From my perspective, it
- 10 would have become more important in the market
- 11 from around 2002 onwards, driven -- I mentioned
- 12 earlier the BP/Shell thing in the market. BP
- 13 fundamentally had a different reputation for
- 14 communicating into the market than Shell, one,
- 15 based on a much greater resource in time and
- 16 effort given to communications than Shell, and a
- 17 reputation for, if you like, setting the
- 18 communication agenda.
- BP had set the production growth agenda
- 20 in 2002. I think you'll find from the record that
- 21 they issued four statements reducing the
- 22 production expectation for the year, thereby
- 23 meaning that they had to shift the agenda that the
- 24 market talked about, because they were also
- 25 falling behind on return on capital, particularly 0083
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 compared to Shell and Exxon, so the two things
- 3 that they had put into the public domain as being
- 4 the key metrics that the market should focus on,
- 5 they were losing out on. They were not delivering
- 6 the production.
- Therefore, sometime earlier in 2002,
- 8 just as an indication, they fired the head of
- 9 Investor Relations and brought in a new guy from

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 51 of 200 PageID:

- 10 the City, effectively, to readjust their
- 11 communications agenda while they were developing
- 12 their Russian deal. Clearly -- which was not
- 13 known in the market at the time, the Russian deal.
- 14 Clearly, they were not going to be successful
- 15 in -- production growth and ROACE were the key
- 16 parameters, so BP moved the conversation away from
- 17 production growth and toward reserves, because
- 18 they saw that as a competitive strength for them
- 19 relative to the other players in the market, and
- 20 from that point in time, the U.K. market, because
- 21 of the very strong influence of BP, had moved to a
- 22 consideration of reserves as being the more
- 23 important parameter than it previously had been.
- 24 BY MR. MACFALL:
- 25 Q Was the Reserves Replacement Ratio 0084
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 discussed in the U.S. markets?
- 3 MR. SMITH: Objection to form. Time
- 4 frame?
- 5 BY MR. MACFALL:
- 6 Q Early 2002 onward to the end of your
- 7 tenure at IR.
- 8 A To be clear, not in the first 15 months,
- 9 I don't recall really any discussion on Reserve
- 10 Replacement Ratio with any investors until 2002
- 11 time frame. Of note, shall I say. I talked to
- 12 investors about hundreds of things, but it was
- 13 never a major issue. From 2002 onwards, it became
- 14 more of an issue with investors around the world,
- 15 but it was initially the U.K. because of BP
- 16 driving the agenda, and I would say the U.S.
- 17 caught up as the 2002 -- because it was not
- 18 something we reported quarterly. It was reported
- 19 only once per year, so once the 2002 figures were
- 20 reported in January/February 2003, the U.S. market
- 21 was taking an interest as well.
- MR. MACFALL: Why don't we go off the
- 23 record.
- 24 THE VIDEOGRAPHER: This marks the end of
- 25 Tape 1 in the deposition of Mr. Henry. We are

0085

file:///Cl/Documents%20and%20Settings/daustin/Desktop/Deposition%20Transcripts/101606sh.txt Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 52 of 200 PageID: 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006 2 going off the record. The time is 12:21 p.m. 3 (Whereupon, the lunch recess was taken.) THE VIDEOGRAPHER: This marks the 4 5 beginning of Tape 2 in the deposition of 6 Mr. Henry. We are back on the record. The time is 1:24 p.m. BY MR. MACFALL: 8 Q Good afternoon, Mr. Henry. 9 10 A Good afternoon. 11 Q I'd like to now go back to the press 12 conferences that were conducted in conjunction 13 with the QRAs. I believe you indicated that 14 certain of those press conferences were webcast; 15 is that correct? 16 Α Yes. I did. Q Are you aware if that webcast or if 17 18 those webcasts were available worldwide? 19 As far as I'm aware, they were available 20 worldwide. 21 Q Do you know if those webcasts were made available for a specific period of time? In other words, were they available for a certain amount of time versus just being covered live and then no longer available? 25

- 0086
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 A I don't recall for the press
- 3 conferences. It wasn't my area. Remember?
- 4 Q Just to go back and follow up on some of
- 5 the issues we discussed this morning, I believe
- 6 you indicated that as a result of some of the work
- 7 done by Thompson's, Shell discerned that there
- 8 were four countries in Continental Europe with
- 9 approximately equal ownership interest in Shell;
- 10 is that correct?
- 11 A That's correct.
- MR. SMITH: Objection to form.
- 13 BY MR. MACFALL:
- 14 Q In addition to -- withdrawn. Was the
- 15 Netherlands one of those countries?
- 16 A The Netherlands was one of those
- 17 countries.

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 53 of 200 PageID:

- Q Could you identify the other three for 23890
- 19 me, please.
- A Switzerland, France and Germany.
- 21 Q Do you recall if the proportion of
- 22 ownership in Shell was approximately the same for
- 23 each of those four countries?
- MR. SMITH: Objection to form.
- THE WITNESS: To the best of my
- 0087
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 knowledge, as I remember it, for each country the
- 3 proportion varied between five and ten percent
- 4 over time, so sometimes one country would be
- 5 larger; another time a different country would be
- 6 larger.
- 7 BY MR. MACFALL:
- 8 Q Now, you previously testified concerning
- 9 the approximate level of ownership in the United
- 10 States. Do you recall -- and again the time
- 11 period is 2001 through 2004 -- the approximate
- 12 level of ownership in the U.K.?
- 13 MR. SMITH: Objection to form and
- 14 foundation. That's not his testimony.
- MR. MACFALL: Withdrawn. I'll rephrase.
- MR. FERRARA: If you're rephrasing, when
- 17 you're talking about "ownership," if we could get
- 18 some sense of what you mean by that.
- MR. MACFALL: Sure.
- 20 BY MR. MACFALL:
- 21 Q Were any studies conducted or
- 22 commissioned by Investor Relations on behalf of
- 23 Shell which concluded that there was an equity --
- 24 withdrawn. Did the Thompson studies commissioned
- 25 by Shell analyze whether Shell shares or Royal
- 0088
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 Dutch/Shell shares were held by investors in the
- 3 United Kingdom?
- 4 MR. SMITH: Objection to form. Both
- 5 companies? "Royal Dutch/Shell" is a little bit
- 6 ambiguous.
- 7 BY MR. MACFALL:
- 8 Q Let's start with Shell and then come to

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 54 of 200 PageID:

- 9 Royal Dutch.
- 10 A The data provided by Thompson's for the
- 11 U.K. market, unlike the U.S. market, would often
- 12 identify nominee shareholders, not the ultimate
- 13 beneficial owner. Thompson's is used to -- aimed
- 14 to look behind the nominee, and they would
- 15 identify the holder to the best of their ability.
- 16 When we looked at the holder from an Investor
- 17 Relations perspective, we were aware that some
- 18 people from outside the U.K. may well be holding
- 19 Shell Transport and Trading shares in the U.K.
- There were no Royal Dutch shares held in
- 21 the U.K. of substance. It was a very small
- 22 number. They were not typically traded in the
- 23 U.K, so our focus was U.K. holders holding the
- 24 Shell Transport and Trading share on the London
- 25 market, we realized some U.K.-based shareholders 0089
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 would hold Royal Dutch shares on the Amsterdam
- 3 market as well, so it was a relatively complex
- 4 picture, and when we were -- our mindset was where
- 5 is the ultimate beneficiary, if not necessarily
- 6 the ultimate shareholder, uh, decision-maker. So
- 7 we were looking for where is the economic benefit,
- 8 the dividend flow, and where is the
- 9 decision-maker.
- 10 THE REPORTER: Where is the economic
- 11 benefit and what?
- 12 THE WITNESS: Dividend, the dividends or
- 13 the ultimate sale of the share. So it's overall
- 14 an inexact science, and we had many issues where
- 15 we would see a shareholder and -- to take an
- 16 example, Merrill Lynch would own some shares
- 17 potentially in the U.S. through the New York Stock
- 18 Exchange, and Merrill Lynch Investment Management
- 19 would own Shell Transport and Trading shares
- 20 through the U.K. Exchange through their U.K.-based
- 21 subsidiary. So when we were looking from our
- 22 perspective, how much is held in U.S., we would --
- 23 when I say "estimate," it generally is an estimate
- 24 of whether ultimately, say, a Merrill Lynch
- 25 subsidiary in the U.K., whether that would camp

0090

1

- SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 for us under, broadly speaking, U.S. or, broadly
- 3 speaking, U.K. When I was talking the 25 number
- 4 from our perspective, we were including that
- 5 particular example in the U.S. Even though it was
- 6 a U.K.-based subsidiary holding, the U.K. share's
- 7 on the London Exchange. It's a fairly complex
- 8 situation, but our aim ultimately was to find out
- 9 who the decision-makers were. Simple as that. I
- 10 imagine it matters where they were held.
- 11 BY MR. MACFALL:
- 12 Q Were you able to quantify the estimate
- 13 with regard to the decision-makers of the Shell
 - 4 Transport shares held in the U.K.?
- 15 A It was always a significant percentage,
- 16 not which we could quantify. It would always be
- 17 over 50 percent.
- 18 Q I believe you previously stated that at
- 19 some point during your tenure at IR there was
- 20 efforts concerning ownership of Shell by investors
- 21 in Japan; is that correct?
- MR. SMITH: Objection to form.
- 23 THE WITNESS: It's correct that I said
- 24 we did from time to time talk to Japanese
- 25 investors, including two visits to Tokyo.
- 0091
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2
- 3 BY MR. MACFALL:
- 4 Q Who was responsible for speaking to
- 5 Japanese investors on behalf of Shell?
- 6 A I was ultimately responsible, and I did
- 7 one of the trips to Tokyo. In terms of my three
- 8 direct reports, Gerard Paulides, the London-based
- 9 individual, was most directly involved, because we
- 10 used Japanese brokers who were based in London, so
- 11 the contact was all through London.
- 12 Q After the Thompson reports were
- 13 commissioned by Shell, was Shell able to ascertain
- 14 the percentage, the approximate percentage of
- 15 ownership by U.S. investors who purchased on
- 16 foreign markets?

- file:///Cl/Documents%20and%20Settings/daustin/Desktop/Deposition%20Transcripts/101606sh.txt Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 56 of 200 PageID: 17 MR. SMITH: When you say "Shell," an 28893 18 you focusing still on Shell Transport and Trading? 19 MR. MACFALL: I am. 20 MR. SMITH: Thank you. THE WITNESS: The only market that would 21 22 have purchased them would have been London, 23 because that was the only market in which any 24 significant number of Shell Transport and Trading 25 shares were actually traded. We could tell --0092 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006 inasmuch as you can look through the nominee to the beneficial holder, we could tell which holders 4 might be U.S.-based, such as Merrill Lynch, such 5 as say Capital Group or Fidelity, and of those 6 names, the ultimate holder, probably, the ultimate holder of the company that was investing would be 8 in the U.S. The company that was investing was 9 typically a U.K.-based subsidiary, Fidelity U.K., 10 Merrill Lynch U.K., Goldman Sachs U.K., Goldman

- 11 Sachs Asset Management U.K. Quite a few of these
- 12 institutions that you would see as being U.S.-
- 13 domiciled but acting in the London or European
- 14 market and in the world's multinational, so they
- 15 were not American citizens typically we were
- 16 dealing with.
- 17 BY MR. MACFALL:
- 18 Q Do you recall if the level of ownership
- by U.S. investors who purchased in foreign markets
- 20 was quantified during your tenure at IR?
- 21 MR. SMITH: Objection to form.
- 22 THE WITNESS: I don't -- I don't recall.
- Looking at it specifically, a lot of the data was
- available to make an estimate based on being able
- 25 to look through the nominees, but it's not 0093
- SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006 1
- something we looked at and said, "That's the
- number we want to aggregate and track."
- 4 BY MR. MACFALL:
- 5 Specifically with respect to the
- 6 Thompson reports, in addition to that particular
- metric or measurement, do you recall what other

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 57 of 200 PageID:

- 8 measures or metrics were reported?
- 23894
- 9 MR. SMITH: Objection to form.
- THE WITNESS: We were interested in the 10
- 11 major buyers and sellers. We were interested in
- 12 the level of concentration in terms of the big
- 13 shareholders, how many were there, the top ten
- 14 holding in each market, Europe, U.K., the U.S.
- 15 But primarily this was, for us, a driver of to
- 16 whom should we talk. It's about marketing. Which
- 17 of your customers should you target the next time
- 18 you did a road trip to, say, Geneva or to Boston.
- 19 We would use this information to identify both
- 20 recent market actions of the big players who we
- would see anyway, and also to potentially identify 21
- 22 people who had not been active in the stock but
- who might be, and aim to visit with the investors
- 24 like that. If that was our focus, we were not
- particularly concerned with overall metrics of the 25 0094
- SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006 1
- kind that you are probing about. That wasn't the
- 3 purpose.
- BY MR. MACFALL:
- 5 Q Do you recall -- withdrawn. Did the
- Thompson reports indicate who were the largest
- shareholders in Shell during your tenure at IR?
- 8 Yes, they did, or at least inasmuch as
- 9 they could be identified. Bearer shares, for
- example, we could not identify.
- MR. SMITH: I think his question was 11
- 12 still Shell.
- THE WITNESS: Oh, Shell Transport and
- 14 Trading, yes, I believe they did, because the
- largest shareholders wouldn't necessarily use a 15
- 16 nominee.
- BY MR. MACFALL: 17
- 18 Q Can you identify any of those
- 19 shareholders?
- I can mention some, but it varied over 20 Α
- time, of course. Barclays Global, which is an
- index fund, would be typically there. We would
- have seen Merrill Lynch Investment, Newton Asset
- Management, Morley, Deutscher Asset Management.

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 58 of 200 PageID:

- 25 I'm trying to think of The Big Scot. Scottish 23895 0095
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 Widows, Standard Life, Ewell, Pioneer Investments.
- 3 Q Thank you. Did those reports identify
- 4 the largest shareholders with respect to Royal
- 5 Dutch?
- 6 A Yes, inasmuch as we could identify them
- 7 because of the bearer share issue.
- 8 Q Can you identify any of those
- 9 shareholders for me.
- 10 A Some in Europe and some in the U.S. In
- 11 the U.S. they would typically include Capital
- 12 Group, Fidelity, Putnam, State Street, Lazard and
- 13 Northern Trust. In Europe they would include ABN
- 14 Asset Management, a variety of Swiss banks, UBS
- 15 Asset Management, Credit Suisse Asset Management,
- 16 Lombard Odier, Daria Hench. Some of the French
- 17 investors; Axa, for example. The big German
- 18 investors: Deag and Deutscher Asset, of course.
- 19 It varied over time. Schroeder's was another U.K.
- 20 one that springs to mind.
- 21 Q With respect to Royal Dutch as opposed
- 22 to Shell, do you recall the approximate --
- 23 withdrawn. With respect to Royal Dutch, do you
- 24 recall the proportion of U.S. investors versus
- 25 Continental European investors versus investors 0096
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 from the United Kingdom during the period 2002 to
- 3 2004?
- 4 MR. FERRARA: Let me ask a point of
- 5 clarification. When you're saying U.S. investors,
- 6 this witness, as I hear him, is distinguishing
- 7 between a U.S. person who bought in a non-U.S.
- 8 account overseas from a U.S. investor who
- 9 purchases in a U.S. account but happens to execute
- 10 overseas. You keep talking about a U.S. investor
- 11 without making the distinction that this witness
- 12 has made.
- 13 MR. MACFALL: That's a fair distinction,
- 14 so why don't I break it down.
- 15 BY MR. MACFALL:

file:///Cl/Documents%20and%20Settings/daustin/Desktop/Deposition%20Transcripts/101606sh.txt Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 59 of 200 PageID: 16 Were you able to ascertain from the 23896 17 Thompson report -- withdrawn. Did the Thompson 18 reports provide data concerning the number of U.S. investors who purchased shares of Royal Dutch on U.S. exchanges during your tenure at IR? 20 21 Yes, it identified the U.S.-based 22 investors who were trading on New York Stock 23 Exchange in the holdings that they had in Royal Dutch Petroleum. It would also identify the much smaller number and much less liquid number of ADRs 0097 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006 of Shell Transport and Trading that were also available on the New York Exchange. 3 4 Q Can you provide a range with respect to -- of ownership with respect to U.S. investors who purchased shares of Royal Dutch by U.S. exchanges? 7 8 MR. SMITH: Objection to form. 9 THE WITNESS: I had spoken earlier of 10 the 25 plus. That was our overall estimate of U.S. investors on both exchanges, so the U.S. on 12 the New York Stock Exchange alone, just in Royal 13 Dutch, not Shell Transport and Trading, which was 14 only 60 percent of the Group, we could identify 15 the total number of shares trading in the U.S., 16 and because of those, Royal Dutch was split 17 between Amsterdam and New York. And if my memory 18 serves me right, that was 30, 40 percent of the 19 total, dependent on the time. That's of total 20 Royal Dutch, not of the Shell Group, and that's 21 one that was reducing over time during my period 22 in IR that I think would have fallen maybe as low as 25 percent towards the end of the period, so 24 25 percent of Royal Dutch, which was 60 percent of 25 the Group.

1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006

3 BY MR. MACFALL:

0098

- 4 Q Now, with respect to U.S. investors
- 5 purchasing shares of Royal Dutch on foreign
- 6 exchanges, was that data reported in the Thompson

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 60 of 200 PageID: 23897

- reports?
- 8 MR. SMITH: Objection to form.
- 9 THE WITNESS: What we could see was
- 10 that, for example, Merrill Lynch Investment
- Management had bought and sold on the London
- 12 Exchange. That we could see. And what we
- 13 believed, because of our ongoing relationship with
- 14 Merrill Lynch Investment Management in the City of
- 15 London, was that those decisions were being made
- 16 in London.
- 17 What I don't know, nor could ever know,
- 18 was the relationship between Merrill Lynch in
- 19 London and Merrill Lynch in New York and what was
- 20 the overall decision-making process, but for
- 21 London-based shares we talked to the London
- 22 office. Same with Goldman Sachs and Fidelity and
- 23 Lehman Asset Management, almost anybody, any of
- the U.S.-based big investors would have a London
- 25 office, and that's who we spoke to about trades in 0099
- SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006 1
- the London market, and then we would see the U.S.
- 3 arm when we came over.
- 4 So I don't know where the ultimate
- 5 investment decision was made, and I'm sure it was
- 6 different for each organization. Capital Group we
- 7 knew were trading in London. They were our
- 8 largest shareholder for quite a period, and
- 9 Capital Group's decision-making structure and
- 10 shareholding structure was opaque to us. We could
- 11 not necessarily identify which part of Capital was
- 12 making which decision and which -- but we knew,
- 13 broadly speaking, which of their investment
- 14 vehicles had made the purchase.
- 15 BY MR. MACFALL:
- 16 Q Based on that answer, were you unaware
- of the estimate of -- withdrawn. Did Thompson's 17
- provide any estimate of U.S. investors purchasing
- shares of Royal Dutch on foreign exchanges based
- 20 on the decision-making criteria you just
- 21 described?
- 22 MR. SMITH: Objection to form.
- 23 THE WITNESS: Based on the

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 61 of 200 PageID:

- 24 decision-making criteria of who was making the 898
- 25 call, no, Thompson's could not. Thompson's could 0100
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 only tell us which physical entity had made the
- 3 transaction, buying, selling, holding, so it was
- 4 up to my team to identify, to the best of our
- 5 extent, the best of our ability, to identify who
- 6 were the real decision-makers in any given
- 7 investment house.
- 8 BY MR. MACFALL:
- 9 Q Was your team able to quantify the
- 10 number of U.S. investors exercising
- 11 decision-making authority with respect to Royal
- 12 Dutch shares who purchased such shares on foreign
- 13 exchanges during your tenure?
- MR. SMITH: Objection to form.
- 15 THE WITNESS: No, we were not, and to be
- 16 honest, we wouldn't care, because that's not how
- 17 we did things. We looked at major customers, who
- 18 makes the decision there. That's who we talked
- 19 to. We did not quantify it in the way that you
- 20 suggest. It was not a relevant issue for us.
- 21 BY MR. MACFALL:
- Q We've discussed at some length the
- 23 dissemination of information surrounding the
- 24 issuance of the QRAs by Shell. Were there other
- 25 regular presentations made by Shell to the 0101
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 financial markets during your tenure at IR?
- 3 A Yes, there were other regular
- 4 presentations. They were what I would -- several
- 5 different times. Firstly, from time to time we
- 6 would hold what we would call a Strategy
- 7 Presentation at a Group level, and that was,
- 8 before my time, always held in the December of
- 9 each year, and in 2001 we repeated that, so that
- 10 presentation included all members of the CMD and
- 11 was to discuss the whole of the Group's financial
- 12 strategy and business strategy and performance.
- 13 That was regular. I discontinued those in 2002.
- 14 We moved to a less regular but still frequent

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 62 of 200 PageID:

- 15 update of Group strategy.
 - In addition, we held what we called
- 17 Business Strategy Presentations, which was to take
- 18 effectively one of the Operating Divisions -- EP,
- 19 Gas and Power, Oil Products -- and hold
- 20 presentations that were specific to that
- 21 Business's strategy and performance. Typically we
- 22 would do the large Businesses once every two
- 23 years, the small Businesses less frequently, or we
- 24 would include with the larger Business.
- We would then accept invitations to

0102

16

- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 speak at conferences held by usually the equity
- 3 analysts at investment banks, banks such as
- 4 Merrill's, UBS, and Lehman's. Those conferences
- 5 would be held -- each bank would typically hold
- 6 one conference each year. Sometimes they held
- 7 two, one in Europe, one in the U.S., and we would
- 8 be invited to speak, and we would ask one of our
- 9 executives, senior executives, to present. And so
- 10 some of the conferences came to our annual --
- 11 Credit Suisse was always in July, Goldman Sachs
- 12 was always in January, so there was a regularity
- 13 around those presentations to groups of investors,
- 14 somewhere between sometimes 30, sometimes 300.
- 15 Depended on the host.
- And we also had a running program of
- 17 what we would term "One-on-one Meetings,"
- 18 roadshows in different locations, such as Boston
- 19 or Geneva that I mentioned earlier, and we would
- 20 build -- we would visit every location at least
- 21 once per year, big locations twice, typically, and
- 22 we would build in some level of presentation,
- 23 maybe a lunch or a dinner or an event with analyst
- 24 societies in those towns or cities that we
- 25 visited. So there was a rolling program of 0103
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 communication. Those are the basic components.
- 3 Q Now, with regard to the Group Strategy
- 4 Presentations, were you involved in those
- 5 presentations?

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 63 of 200 PageID:

6 A Yes, I was.

- 23900
- 7 Q And could you describe your role in that
- 8 process for me.
- 9 A It would be -- I was the focal point for
- 10 the presentation, and everything to be presented
- 11 came through me, but clearly I was working on
- 12 behalf of the Executive Team. So for a Group
- 13 Strategy Presentation, the main driver behind this
- 14 would be usually Sir Philip. The presentation
- 15 would be -- the aim or the purpose was to
- 16 communicate group strategy and performance in a
- 17 competitive light and clearly to help investors
- 18 understand better some of the strengths of the
- 19 Business.
- So I would get a general steer from Phil
- 21 as to what elements he wanted to cover and what he
- 22 wanted to talk about. I discussed with Judy, I
- 23 discussed with the other Managing Directors, and I
- 24 would draft the presentation, the messages to go
- 25 with the presentation. My team would start to 0104
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 work with the Businesses, and we'd put together
- 3 the whole of the presentation, the briefing
- 4 materials for the question-and-answer material.
- 5 We would do the logistics. We would arrange
- 6 invitations, arrange all the follow-up meetings,
- 7 the one-on-one's that would typically follow. We
- 8 would do all of the website communications and
- 9 basically handle everything as a complete service
- 10 to the CMD.
- 11 Q Who normally spoke at these Group
- 12 Strategy Presentations?
- 13 A Normally Phil would be the main speaker,
- 14 and at a Group Strategy Presentation usually all
- 15 the other Managing Directors would also speak.
- 16 They'd speak about their Business, and Judy would
- 17 speak about the financial framework.
- 18 Q Where were these Strategy Presentations
- 19 conducted?
- 20 A We used to do two versions. The first
- 21 one was always held in London, and usually we
- 22 followed up with a day later in New York.

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 64 of 200 PageID:

- Q Was that the practice during your tenur@901
- 24 at IR?
- 25 A Yes, it was the practice throughout my 0105
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 tenure.
- 3 Q Why did the group conduct two Strategy
- 4 Presentations?
- 5 A Just to be clear, the content was the
- 6 same. We didn't have two strategies. The content
- 7 was always the same, and they were only 24 hours
- 8 apart. The reason for doing two was that we would
- 9 talk first to the London market, because that's
- 10 where the price was set, and we could attract
- 11 somewhere between 150 and 300 investors in London,
- 12 because we were attracting from a Continental
- 13 European market, and there was a significant
- 14 interest in the stock.
- The reason then for going to the U.S.
- 16 was to give face-to-face opportunity for usually
- 17 around a hundred, maybe 70 to a hundred U.S.-based
- 18 investors, both sell side analysts and the buy
- 19 side investors, to get a chance to go face to
- 20 face, to ask questions, to meet and see the
- 21 Leadership Team, the Executive Team, because a
- 22 large part of an investment decision, we were well
- 23 aware, is the confidence that the investor has in
- 24 the management -- credibility of the Management
- 25 Team, and that can only be enhanced through 0106
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 face-to-face contacts. So this was a chance once
- 3 a year or so for investors in -- the U.S. is a
- 4 very large investment market -- to get that
- 5 face-to-face contact.
- 6 Q With respect to the Group Strategy
- 7 Presentation that was conducted in the United
- 8 States, was it Shell's intent to increase
- 9 ownership in Shell by U.S. investors?
- 10 A It was always our intent to increase
- 11 demand for Shell's, either Shell Transport and
- 12 Trading or Royal Dutch shares, wherever that might
- 13 be, whether it be in the U.S. or Europe, and I

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 65 of 200 PageID:

- 14 didn't really care whether they were from Eur@@02
- 15 or the U.S., as long as there was demand. So an
- 16 increase in the U.S. percentage could also be
- 17 achieved by reducing the European percentage, so
- 18 that's not -- it wasn't just a matter of
- 19 increasing the U.S. percentage. I wanted overall
- 20 demand to increase, so obviously it was a
- 21 marketing attempt.
- Q With regard to the format of the Group
- 23 Strategy Presentations, were prepared remarks
- 24 delivered by the Shell executives who addressed
- 25 the analysts and investors at those presentations? 0107
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 A Yes. They would usually do ten minutes
- 3 each of prepared remarks.
- 4 Q Did Mr. Watts typically deliver prepared
- 5 remarks at those Strategy Presentations?
- 6 A Yes, he did.
- 7 Q Were you involved in the preparation of
- 8 the prepared remarks delivered by Mr. Watts?
- 9 A Yes, I was.
- 10 Q Could you describe for me your role in
- 11 that process.
- 12 A Sometimes I would do a first draft,
- 13 sometimes it would be one of my team, for Sir
- 14 Philip, based on usually a briefing that Phil had
- 15 given, and to take that draft usually through Judy
- 16 back to Sir Phil for his views on whether it met
- 17 his needs, and it was a iterative process usually
- 18 whereby Phil would then take that to the rest of
- 19 the CMD, share it so that they had the context of
- 20 what Phil was saying to position what they were
- 21 then going to say, and ultimately it would be
- 22 approved by Phil and Judy.
- Q Now, with regard to the preparation of
- 24 the first draft, I believe you indicated that it
- 25 would be predicated, in part, on the briefing 0108
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 provided by Mr. Watts; is that correct?
- 3 A Yes.
- 4 MR. MORSE: Objection to form.

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 66 of 200 PageID:

5 BY MR. MACFALL:

- 23903
- 6 Q Could you describe to me what you mean
- 7 by the briefing provided by Mr. Watts.
- 8 A It would be either a discussion with
- 9 Phil, or on one occasion he drafted some notes,
- 10 some handwritten notes and said this is how I
- 11 would like for you to set it out, the key
- 12 messages. Now go away and bring me back a
- 13 finished article.
- 14 Q The discussions that took place with
- 15 Mr. Watts; were they discussions that you had with
- 16 him?
- 17 A Yes, they were.
- 18 Q Was anyone else involved in those
- 19 discussions?
- A Sometimes Judy was involved, sometimes
- 21 one of my team would be involved, but that was,
- 22 that was mainly Phil, Judy and my team. Oh, Mary
- 23 Jo Jacobi from time to time.
- 24 Q During those discussions did you ever
- 25 make suggestions to Mr. Watts concerning what 0109
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 topics should be addressed in the market?
- 3 A Regularly. That was my main
- 4 contribution.
- 5 Q What would you base those
- 6 recommendations or suggestions on?
- A The analysts' reports on the industry,
- 8 on Shell, the questions we were receiving from
- 9 investors in the preceding few months, and what I
- 10 knew -- to the extent that I knew it -- about
- 11 Shell's future plans and performance expectations
- 12 and how they might compare competitively.
- 13 Q Now, with respect to that last
- 14 component, Shell's future plans, how is it that
- 15 you would ascertain that information?
- 16 A The Group Strategy Presentations were
- 17 usually in December or -- and when we moved it, we
- 18 moved it really to February or March, so this was
- 19 after the conclusion of the Group Business Plan.
- 20 At the end of the year, usually December, and
- 21 during the process leading up to the approval of

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 67 of 200 PageID:

- 22 the Business Plan, I'd usually been involved in 23904
- 23 commenting on the Business Plan and its
- 24 competitive positioning, particular in the period
- 25 from September to December, so I wouldn't 0110
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 necessarily always have a full copy of the Plan,
- 3 but I was aware of the major -- particularly the
- 4 financial metrics, and -- that were included in
- 5 the Plan.
- 6 Q Did Mr. Watts normally adopt your
- 7 suggestions concerning the issues to be discussed
- 8 in the Strategy Presentations?
- 9 A We had what Sir Philip would have called
- 10 "robust discussions" from time to time, but we
- 11 usually came to some agreement on what was best.
- 12 Phil was good in listening to what the market was
- 13 saying.
- 14 Q Do you recall any instances when
- 15 Mr. Watts suggested that an issue be discussed
- 16 that you thought should not be discussed at a
- 17 Group Strategy Presentation?
- 18 A I don't remember a specific instance or
- 19 the content of the instance. I remember a lot of
- 20 discussions backwards and forwards, but they were
- 21 quite open, open-ended.
- 22 Q Approximately how far in advance of a
- 23 conduct of the Strategy Presentation would these
- 24 discussions occur?
- 25 A Usually start about three months. If it 0111
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 were a December meeting, less, but if it were in
- 3 February, it would be three months to cope with
- 4 the holiday period and the quarter end period as
- 5 well.
- 6 Q Did Ms. Boynton normally speak at these
- 7 Group Strategy Presentations?
- 8 A Yes, she did.
- 9 Q Did she deliver prepared remarks also?
- 10 A Yes, she did.
- 11 Q Do you know who was involved in the
- 12 preparation of those prepared remarks of

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 68 of 200 PageID:

13 Ms. Boynton?

- 23905
- 14 A Identical process to Sir Philip. There
- 15 would be discussion with Judy about general,
- 16 general guidance about what she wanted to say, and
- 17 I or my team would draft it, and then we would
- 18 work with Judy to finalize it, then through
- 19 ultimately support from Sir Philip and the CMD.
- Q Do you recall if you also raised market
- 21 concerns and questions with Ms. Boynton during
- 22 your discussions with her?
- A Very much.
- MR. SMITH: Objection to form.
- 25 THE WITNESS: Very much so. That was
- 0112
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 again the prime -- the prime purpose of my
- 3 contribution was to say this is where the market
- 4 is and this is where we're positioned and some of
- 5 the issues you need to address.
- 6 BY MR. MACFALL:
- 7 Q I believe you indicated that other
- 8 Managing Directors also spoke at these Group
- 9 Strategy Presentations; is that correct?
- 10 A I did indicate that, yes.
- 11 Q Were these the Managing Directors for
- 12 each of the Shell Businesses?
- 13 A Yes, basically. Not all the period were
- 14 they directly responsible for the Business, but
- 15 typically the Managing Director responsible for
- 16 Oil Products, the Managing Director responsible
- 17 for Chemicals, the Managing Director responsible
- 18 for Gas and Power, and the Managing Director
- 19 responsible for Exploration & Production.
- 20 Q Now, with respect to each of those
- 21 Businesses, do you recall the specific individuals
- 22 who were the Managing Directors during your tenure
- 23 at IR?
- A Just about -- which particular year,
- 25 though? Because it did change.
- 0113
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 O Okay, with regard to 2001.
- 3 A 2001, I believe Walter van der Vijver

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 69 of 200 PageID:

- 4 was running EP, Paul Skinner for Oil Products 23906
- 5 Jeroon Vandaveer for Chemicals, and Harry Roels --
- 6 that's R-O-E-L-S -- for Gas and Power.
- 7 Q Now, with respect to EP, was Mr. van der
- 8 Vijver Managing Director throughout your tenure at
- 9 IR?
- 10 A Only from June 2001 until March 2004.
- 11 Q Did each of the -- withdrawn. Did the
- 12 Managing Directors who spoke at the Group Strategy
- 13 Presentations also deliver prepared statements?
- 14 A Yes, they did.
- 15 Q Could you describe the process by which
- 16 those prepared statements were prepared.
- 17 A For the Business Managing Directors, it
- 18 was slightly different, in that those speeches
- 19 were originated in the Businesses themselves. We
- 20 would have, from IR, have given guidance on "these
- 21 are the specific issues for the market or your
- 22 competitor position that we feel you should
- 23 address or talk about," but the actual origination
- 24 of the speech was in the Businesses themselves,
- 25 and we would perform a review or an editing 0114
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 process rather than being the controller of the
- 3 content.
- 4 Q When you say that IR would apprise the
- 5 Business Managing Directors of market issues, who
- 6 was it that that was communicated to? Withdrawn.
- 7 Was there a particular person who was responsible
- 8 for acting as a liaison between Investor Relations
- 9 and the specific Business organizations?
- 10 A Yes. It varied from event to event, but
 - 1 no, usually two or three levels. I would talk
- 12 directly to the Managing Director if appropriate.
- 13 A relatively senior individual in each Business
- 14 would be given the role of coordinating all the
- 15 activity in the Business, and we would have a more
- 16 junior individual who would deal with numbers and
- 17 facts and chasing information, so we had some
- 18 clear coordination points, and the senior
- 19 individual might be the head of Planning or it
- 20 might be the CFO or -- it just varied between

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 70 of 200 PageID:

- 21 Businesses.
- Q Now, with respect to market concerns and
- 23 issues, did you communicate those to the Managing
- 24 Directors of the Businesses directly?
- MR. SMITH: Objection to form.
- 0115
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- THE WITNESS: It was my role to do that
- 3 regularly, not just for the Group Strategy
- 4 Presentations, but yes, for Group Strategy
- 5 Presentations I would do that explicitly.
- 6 BY MR. MACFALL:
- 7 Q Were you actually involved in the review
- 8 of the drafts of the prepared statements that were
- 9 drafted for each of the Managing Directors for the
- 10 Businesses?
- 11 MR. SMITH: Is your question about each
- 12 Strategy Presentation?
- MR. MACFALL: Let me rephrase that.
- 14 BY MR. MACFALL:
- 15 Q Did you actually review the prepared
- 16 statements that were delivered by the Managing
- 17 Directors of each of the Businesses?
- 18 A Yes, I did.
- MR. SMITH: Objection to form.
- 20 BY MR. MACFALL:
- 21 Q Why did you review those prepared
- 22 statements?
- A Several reasons. One was for
- 24 consistency of message across the different
- 25 speakers. Then there was consistency of message 0116
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 across time for that given Business. And the
- 3 market has a long memory, so it was important that
- 4 there was some consistency from year to year in
- 5 what was talked about. I would review them for
- 6 whether I felt it was effective communication of
- 7 the right kind of messages. And lastly, I would
- 8 review them from a regulatory perspective as to
- 9 whether there were potentially any items or issues
- 10 that were to be of a material enough nature to --
- 11 and whatever disclosure regulation was

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 71 of 200 PageID:

- appropriate, as we were working in three differences
- 13 markets -- as to whether there would be an issue.
- 14 When we had confirmed, that's what we wanted to
- 15 say, whether it would be a discloseable item and
- 16 therefore precipitate a Stock Exchange Release.
- 17 Q I believe that you said one of the
- 18 things you would review them for was to determine
- 19 whether or not it gave the right kind of message.
- 20 What is it that you mean by that?
- 21 A The group strategy would be -- for
- 22 example, when I came in, the communications was
- 23 around delivery of a road map which was a set of
- 24 targets or a strategy designed to deliver a set of
- 25 targets around return on capital, production
- 0117
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 growth, cost reductions. If one of the Businesses
- 3 were -- was following a strategy or was giving a
- 4 message that was inconsistent with those being
- 5 high level important metrics for the Group, then I
- 6 would be helping people to align. There were also
- 7 issues around competitors as well. Quite often,
- 8 people were looking to communicate their
- 9 competitive position on a particular metric,
- 10 whether it be production or cost or sales volumes,
- 11 and we would have a role in terms of is that
- 12 really the message you want to give, can you
- 13 sustain that over a period of time. It's not just
- 14 enough for this presentation; it's got to last for
- 15 the next two or three years. So we had a wide
- 16 range of discussion basically.
- 17 Q With regard to the alignment of messages
- 18 with concern to return on capital and cost
- 19 reductions, do you have a recollection of any
- 20 specific instances where a Managing Business
- 21 Director's statement needed to be corrected
- 22 because it gave an inconsistent message?
- 23 MR. SMITH: Objection to form.
- 24 THE WITNESS: Not specific instance
- 25 necessarily around a Strategy Presentation, but
- 0118
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 ultimately there were times when we were talking

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 72 of 200 PageID:

- 3 about return on capital being associated with a²³⁹⁰⁹
- 4 given oil price, and if the oil price that was
- 5 being assumed were to change based on a different
- 6 view of the world, what impact would that have on
- 7 return on capital at a given oil price, and I
- 8 recall having various discussions around does that
- 9 mean return on capital should go up or does it
- 10 stay the same, genuine discussions about the
- 11 linkage to the strategy of the company at the
- 12 investment levels, whether they should change and
- 13 whether -- and how that should be presented into
- 14 the market.
- 15 BY MR. MACFALL:
- 16 Q Do you remember who you had those
- 17 conversations with?
- 18 A That was the sort of conversation that
- 19 would typically be had with -- I remember talking
- 20 with Steven Hodge on the subject, and Judy Boynton
- 21 and obviously Sir Philip.
- 22 Q Now, with respect to regulatory
- 23 disclosure requirements, did those differ from
- 24 country to country?
- MR. SMITH: Objection to form and
- 0119
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 foundation.
- 3 THE WITNESS: Yes, they did differ.
- 4 BY MR. MACFALL:
- 5 Q Was, was it part of IR's function to
- 6 ensure compliance with those various regulatory
- 7 requirements?
- 8 A It was part of our function, but we were
- 9 not solely responsible within the organization for
- 10 that.
- 11 Q Who else was responsible?
- 12 A Ultimately the CMD were responsible for
- 13 disclosure, but we worked closely with the Company
- 14 Secretaries for each company, both Royal Dutch and
- 15 Shell Transport and Trading, for advice, and we
- 16 saw them as the -- as ultimately accountable for
- 17 public statements. So they gave the advice; we
- 18 had the content.
- 19 Q Were drafts of the various prepared

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 73 of 200 PageID: 20 statements utilized by Mr. Watts, Ms. Boynton 3010 21 various Managing Directors at Group Strategy Presentations run by the Company Secretaries? 22

23 Do you mean did we share those drafts

24 with the Company Secretaries?

25 Q Yes.

0120

- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- A Not really in draft form. A final 2
- version may be shared with them, but ultimately
- what was, was shared with the Company Secretaries
- 5 was any text or information that would actually be
- 6 put out on a formal regulatory release, initially
- 7 through the London Stock Exchange and subsequently
- 8 filed as a 6-K in the U.S., typically, so any
- regulatory release would need the support or
- 10 approval of the Company Secretary. Our role was
- 11 to highlight to the Company Secretaries when we
- 12 thought a release was required. So the whole of
- 13 the draft presentation was not part of the
- 14 regulatory release, and therefore it didn't
- 15 usually go to the Company Secretary. It would be
- 16 copied for information at a relatively late stage.
- 17 Q You stated previously that the address
- 18 by the Managing Directors of the various
- 19 Businesses were viewed in part to determine
- whether or not a regulatory disclosure requirement
- 21 had been impacted. Were those prepared remarks --
- 22 specifically the Business Managing Directors'
- prepared remarks -- forwarded for review to the 23
- 24 Company Secretaries?
- 25 A Not that I recall.

- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- Q Do you recall any specific instance
- where IR determined that a proposed statement in a
- Managing Director's draft of a prepared statement
- 5 triggered a regulatory disclosure requirement?
- MR. SMITH: Where IR determined that? 6
- MR. MACFALL: Yeah.
- MR. SMITH: Just to be careful, I'd like
- to admonish the witness that because the Company
- Secretaries are both legal counsel to the

file:///Cl/Documents%20and%20Settings/daustin/Desktop/Deposition%20Transcripts/101606sh.txt Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 74 of 200 PageID: 11 companies, that if responding to that question 23911 12 would cause you to reveal advice you received from company counsel, we should discuss that before you respond to the question.

15 THE WITNESS: Then we probably should 16 discuss.

17 THE VIDEOGRAPHER: We are going off the 18 record. The time is 2:19 p.m. 19

(Whereupon, a short recess was held.)

THE VIDEOGRAPHER: We are back on the

21 record. The time is 2:29 p.m.

20

22 THE WITNESS: I believe the request was 23 made, the specific instance, in which IR had identified the Stock Exchange Release may be 24

required. The example that comes to mind was from 0122

SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006 1

- 2 late July, early August 2001, around the event of
- 3 the Second Quarter Results Announcement where we
- 4 were in pretty early stages of the Business Plan
- 5 that year, and from what we could see in terms of
- 6 the early numbers we were getting out to the
- 7 Business Plan, the production growth target that
- the company had in the market in the time, which
- was for a five percent per year growth, was
- 10 looking challenging.
- 11 It was too soon for us to be able to say
- 12 what level of production growth the company could
- deliver, but it was likely that the company would
- 14 not be able to deliver the five percent that they
- 15 had previously talked about. This was one issue
- 16 identified through IR as a possible disclosure
- 17 issue. We did take some advice, but what we
- 18 actually then did was make a Stock Exchange
- 19 Release on the morning of the Quarterly Results
- 20 Announcement with basically the words I've just
- used, that meeting our production growth target
- would be a challenge.
- 23 BY MR. MACFALL:
- Q Now, when you say Shell made a Stock 24
- 25 Exchange Release, could you please explain to me 0123
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 75 of 200 PageID:

- 2 what it is you mean by that.
- 23912
- 3 A It is a regulatory release onto the
- 4 London Stock Exchange done usually before the
- 5 market opened, that it was done through -- be on
- 6 Newswire and direct onto the London Stock Exchange
- 7 R&S system. And the reason for using this medium
- 8 of disclosure was then instant communication to
- 9 the whole of the investor base so that disclosure
- 10 to all investors with access to that system would
- 11 be equal and fair. We also simultaneously would
- 12 make a release on the Amsterdam Stock Exchange.
- 13 As these were usually made in a period when the
- 14 New York Stock Exchange was closed, I'm not sure
- 15 we made a separate announcement on the New York
- 16 Exchange, because the information was already in
- 17 the market from the London Exchange.
- 18 Q Do you recall if Shell made any other
- 19 efforts to disseminate that information in the
- 20 United States?
- 21 A That particular piece of information
- 22 would have been part of the presentation later
- 23 that day made by Philip Watts as the Chairman of
- 24 CMD, and that presentation was webcast globally,
- 25 so it would have been accessible by U.S.-based 0124
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 investors. And the presentation material and the
- 3 Quarterly Results Announcement, which included the
- 4 statement, were all made available on the Shell
- 5 website, so ...
- 6 Q Do you know how long it was made
- 7 available on the Shell website?
- 8 A For Investor Relations presentations
- 9 it's probably still there. Certainly for several,
- 10 several years. I'm not sure if it goes back that
- 11 far.
- 12 Q Thank you.
- Besides what you just described, did you
- 14 have any other responsibility concerning
- 15 compliance with regulatory requirements during
- 16 your tenure at IR?
- 17 A For -- I mentioned the QRA, which was a
- 18 regulatory document. For any announcement on a

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 76 of 200 PageID:

- 19 major event or transaction -- for example, dur 139 13
- 20 my time we acquired Pennzoil in the United States
- 21 and Enterprise Oil in the U.K., and they were
- 22 publicly quoted companies, so the acquisition was
- 23 a public transaction. So that clearly was
- 24 accompanied by a variety of regulatory releases,
- 25 usually in conjunction with the investment banks 0125
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 acting for us in that circumstance, but
- 3 coordinated with, uh, with my team.
- 4 We would on say, for example, a major
- 5 investment decision, I think, if I remember
- 6 rightly, for Sakhalin and Qatar Gas to Liquids,
- 7 such large investment decisions, we would consider
- 8 a regulatory release. For the Group Strategy
- 9 Presentations we would typically do a regulatory
- 10 release. And then, of course, there are the
- 11 Annual Reports, in particular the U.K. Annual
- 12 Report, what was the Royal Dutch Annual Report,
- 13 and the 20-F filing in the United States.
- 14 For the 20-F filing, my team would
- 15 perform a role reviewing narrative, reviewing
- 16 numbers, again with this consistency check, but we
- 17 were not the prime source of that information.
- 18 That was provided by the Businesses or by the
- 19 Group Reporting Team, and the disclosure, the
- 20 overall disclosure on that document was not part
- 21 of my responsibility.
- Q Did you have any responsibility for
- 23 disclosure requirements in the United States?
- MR. SMITH: Objection to form.
- 25 THE WITNESS: Only for the content of 0126
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 the 6-Ks that accompanied the Quarterly Results
- 3 Announcement or the events I just talked about.
- 4 BY MR. MACFALL:
- 5 Q Are you familiar with certain
- 6 legislation enacted in the United States known as
- 7 Sarbanes Oxley?
- 8 A Yes, I am familiar with Sarbanes Oxley,
- 9 Sections 302 and 404 in particular.

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 77 of 200 PageID:

- 10 Q Did you have any responsibility in 23914
- 11 connection with Shell's compliance with Sarbanes
- 12 Oxley?
- MR. SMITH: Time frame? While he was in
- 14 IR?
- MR. MACFALL: While he was in IR.
- 16 THE WITNESS: While I was in IR I had no
- 17 responsibility for Section 404. For Section 302
- 18 we moved to set up a Disclosure Committee for the
- 19 Royal Dutch/Shell Group, and I was a member of the
- 20 Disclosure Committee that followed the Sarbanes
- 21 Oxley Section 302 requirement on disclosure.
- 22 BY MR. MACFALL:
- Q Do you recall when that committee was
- 24 created?
- A I believe during 2003, but -- middle,
- 0127
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 middle of 2003.
- 3 Q Who were the other members of that
- 4 committee?
- 5 MR. SMITH: At that time?
- 6 BY MR. MACFALL:
- 7 Q At that time.
- 8 A At the time? The Group Controller.
- 9 Q Tim Morrison?
- 10 A Mary Jo Jacobi, the head of Media
- 11 Relations, and Jyoti Munsiff, the Company
- 12 Secretary for Shell Transport and Trading, and I
- 13 believe Michiel Brandjes, the Company Secretary
- 14 for Royal Dutch Petroleum, the latter two, of
- 15 course, who were both lawyers.
- 16 Q With respect to the individuals you just
- 17 identified as the Secretaries for Shell and Royal
- 18 Dutch respectively, were those same individuals --
- 19 well, did those same individuals hold those
- 20 positions back in 2001 in connection with the
- 21 disclosure issue you previously testified about?
- A Jyoti Munsiff did, but the Company
- 23 Secretary for Royal Dutch Petroleum at that time
- 24 was Rob van der Vlist.
- Q Thank you.
- 0128

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 78 of 200 PageID:

- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006 23915
- 2 Could you please briefly describe for me
- 3 what the duties and responsibilities of the
- 4 Disclosure Committee were at that time.
- 5 A Two, three things. To define the
- 6 disclosure control framework that was appropriate
- 7 for the Royal Dutch/Shell Group, who should do
- 8 what when; to review possible items or events or
- 9 pieces of information for disclosure, as to
- 10 whether and how they should be disclosed; and
- 11 finally to follow up any disclosure incidents
- 12 where items of information that entered the public
- 13 domain in an uncontrolled fashion.
- 14 Q With respect to the last of those
- 15 responsibilities, can you recall any specific
- 16 instance when information entered the public
- 17 domain in an uncontrolled fashion?
- 18 A Talking about any point in time?
- 19 Because it's easier to remember more recent
- 20 information.
- MR. SMITH: When you were head of IR?
- THE WITNESS: When I was head of IR?
- 23 BY MR. MACFALL:
- 24 Q Yes, during your tenure at IR.
- 25 A It's difficult to remember a specific
- 0129
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 instance.
- 3 Q Let me reframe the question. It might
- 4 help a little bit. Do you remember any specific
- 5 instances that required action by the Disclosure
- 6 Committee?
- 7 A Not while I was a member of the
- 8 Disclosure Committee.
- 9 Q Do you recall any specific instances
- 10 that occurred subsequent to your tenure at IR?
- 11 Withdrawn. I'm sorry. Are you aware of any
- 12 specific instances that required action by the
- 13 Disclosure Committee after you left that
- 14 Committee?
- 15 A Yes.
- 16 Q Okay. And could you please briefly
- 17 describe for me the circumstances surrounding that

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 79 of 200 PageID:

- 18 incident.
- 19 A A senior executive made a statement
- 20 about the intent to discuss a particular item with
- 21 the Securities and Exchange Commission. That
- 22 particular executive did not -- first of all, did
- 23 not know the facts, did not know what the intent
- 24 to discuss anything with the Securities and
- 25 Exchange Commission was, but he was a senior 0130
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 enough executive to be quoted in the newspapers as
- 3 a result.
- 4 Q When did that incident occur?
- 5 A In the last month.
- 6 Q Who was the individual involved?
- 7 THE WITNESS: Do I need to identify for
- 8 this purpose?
- 9 MR. FERRARA: Is it a privileged
- 10 discussion with an attorney?
- 11 THE WITNESS: I haven't had any
- 12 discussion with an attorney.
- 13 MR. SMITH: Could we go off the record
- 14 and understand what his concern is.
- MR. MACFALL: Yeah, that's fine.
- 16 THE VIDEOGRAPHER: We are going off the
- 17 record. The time is 2:43 p.m.
- 18 (Whereupon, a short recess was taken.)
- 19 THE VIDEOGRAPHER: We are back on the
- 20 record. The time is 2:48 p.m.
- 21 BY MR. MACFALL:
- Q Mr. Henry, after a brief conversation
- 23 off the record, I'd actually like to reframe my
- 24 question for you and I'll reask it. Do you recall
- 25 any instances where unauthorized statements were
- 0131
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 made that required Disclosure Committee action
- 3 that involved facts arising during the time period
- 4 1999 to 2004? Excuse me.
- 5 A No, I don't recall any.
- 6 Q How long were you a member of the
- 7 Sarbanes Oxley Disclosure Committee?
- 8 A From when it was constituted until

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 80 of 200 PageID:

- 9 June 2004, give or take a week or two, when m² 917
- 10 replacement as head of Group Investor Relations
- 11 replaced me.
- 12 Q And can you identify that individual for
- 13 me, please.
- 14 A The individual who replaced me was David
- 15 Lawrence.
- 16 Q During the tenure of your membership on
- 17 the Disclosure Committee, was there ever any
- 18 discussion in the Committee about the necessity of
- 19 disclosing information concerning proved reserves
- 20 at Shell?
- 21 A I don't actually recall discussing it at
- 22 the Disclosure Committee. Probably, if I did,
- 23 there were lawyers present in the Disclosure
- 24 Committee, so I'll probably need to take advice.
- 25 There was much discussion about disclosure that I 0132
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 was aware of, rather than necessarily party to,
- around the period December 2003, January 2004,
- 4 which did not necessarily pass through the
- 5 Disclosure Committee, because the members of that
- 6 Disclosure Committee were involved in the
- 7 discussions anyway.
- 8 Q Did that Disclosure Committee meet
- 9 regularly?
- 10 A Not that regularly. Initially the
- 11 re-meet was to set up the framework, the policy,
- 12 the procedures.
- 13 Q Was that -- I'm sorry.
- 14 A It would meet regularly ahead of a
- 15 regular event, such as the Quarterly Results, and
- 16 I don't recall whether that began during 2003 in
- 17 terms of the Q2 and Q3 results, but that would be
- 18 the regular meeting where the Disclosure Committee
- 19 would consider disclosure around quarterly
- 20 results.
- 21 Q Now, with respect to the framework for
- 22 disclosure that you described, was that
- 23 memorialized in a document or documents?
- 24 A There was two documents: Investor
- 25 Relations Policy and the, um, Disclosure Policy

- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 and the Media Relations Protocol. It was then
- 3 called the Investor Relations Protocol which laid
- 4 out -- the Investor Relations Protocol laid out
- 5 what would constitute a discloseable event or
- 6 action and what should individuals do if they were
- 7 aware of such information, and how would it be
- 8 considered.
- 9 Q Is there a primary draftsperson for the
- 10 Investor Relations Protocol?
- 11 A Gerard Paulides, who worked for me in
- 12 London.
- 13 Q I believe you stated earlier that Mr.
- 14 Paulides was Mr. Harrop's successor?
- 15 A That's correct, yes.
- 16 Q Did Mr. Paulides have any formal Shell
- 17 training in the requirements of Sarbanes Oxley, to
- 18 the best of your knowledge?
- 19 A Not at that point in time.
- Q Did there come a point in time when he
- 21 did?
- A He may well have had training in
- 23 Sarbanes Oxley 404 Section requirements. Since
- 24 then I don't know about Section 302.
- Q Was a draft prepared by Mr. Paulides 0134
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 reviewed by the various members of the Disclosure
- 3 Committee?
- 4 A Yes, I believe it was.
- 5 Q Do you recall if you reviewed the
- 6 initial draft prepared by Mr. Paulides?
- A I don't recall doing it, but it would
- 8 have had my name on it, so I believe I would have
- 9 reviewed it.
- 10 Q Do you have any recollection as to
- 11 whether or not the draft initially submitted by
- 12 Mr. Paulides was changed by the Disclosure
- 13 Committee and differed from the final version?
- 14 A No, I don't.
- 15 Q I'd like to just backtrack for a moment.
- 16 Something just triggered this. With respect to

file:///Cl/Documents%20and%20Settings/daustin/Desktop/Deposition%20Transcripts/101606sh.txt Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 82 of 200 PageID: 17 the Thompson reports or surveys that were commissioned by IR, were those surveys retained by 19 IR? 20 MR. SMITH: Objection to foundation. 21 THE WITNESS: Do you mean the documents were kept on record? 22 23 BY MR. MACFALL: O Yes. 24 25 A I believe so. 0135 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006 Do you know if -- withdrawn. At the 3 time that you left Investor Relations, were those documents still on file at Investor Relations? 5 MR. SMITH: Objection to form and lack of foundation. THE WITNESS: I'd have to admit I don't 8 know. BY MR. MACFALL: Q Did there come a time when Thompson's 10 stopped generating those reports during your 11 tenure at IR? 12 13 A Not during my IR. 14 MR. MACFALL: To the extent that

- 15 defendants have not already done so -- and I do
- 16 not believe that they have -- plaintiffs would
- request that such reports that are still in the
- possession, custody and control of defendants be
- 19 produced to plaintiffs.
- 20 MR. SMITH: I'll take your request under
- 21 advisement.
- 22 MR. MACFALL: Thank you.
- 23 BY MR. MACFALL:
- 24 Q Going back to the Group Strategy
- 25 Presentations, we have discussed the prepared 0136
- SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006 1
- 2 statements. Were there also -- excuse me.
- Withdrawn. Was there also a Q&A session that was
- 4 conducted as part of that Group Strategy
- Presentation?
- 6 There would always be an open Q&A
- session in any of the presentations.

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 83 of 200 PageID:

- 8 Q Were sample or likely questions drafte 3920
- 9 or prepared by IR for review by the speakers at
- 10 that presentation, at those presentations?
- 11 A Yes, they were.
- 12 Q Were you involved in the drafting of
- 13 those questions?
- 14 A Frequently, yes.
- 15 Q What was the basis of -- withdrawn. Did
- 16 you formulate those questions based on concerns
- 17 expressed in the market at that time?
- 18 A In part, yes.
- 19 Q Were there other factors that
- 20 contributed to the formulation of those questions?
- 21 A Our competitive positioning and our
- 22 knowledge of where our concerns were with
- 23 investors may not actually have been a recent
- 24 question from them, but we'd be looking back over
- 25 six, 12 months, maybe, as to what were the key,
- 0137
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 the key things, the key areas that were of concern
- 3 and therefore most likely to be asked. We would
- 4 also be looking at recent events in the
- 5 industry -- oil price goes up, competitor has a
- 6 production issue, so -- government makes a
- 7 statement, so up-to-the-minute events as well, so
- 8 look back and also over the last 48 hours.
- 9 Q Were proposed answers to those questions
- 10 also prepared by IR?
- 11 A Yes, they were, although we did not
- 12 necessarily originate all of those. If they were
- 13 Business-specific, typically the answer would
- 14 originate in the Business, be reviewed and
- 15 commented on by IR in exactly the same way that
- 16 the prepared speech would be.
- 17 Q Were there rehearsal sessions with the
- 18 speakers at the Group Strategy Presentations in
- 19 connection with the Q&A sessions?
- 20 A For a Group Strategy Presentation,
- 21 usually, yes.
- Q Did Mr. Watts participate in those
- 23 rehearsals?
- A If there was a rehearsal, Sir Philip

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 84 of 200 PageID:

25 would always participate.

- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 Q Did Ms. Boynton participate?
- 3 A Similarly for Judy. Judy would always
- 4 participate if there were a rehearsal.
- 5 Q How about Mr. van der Vijver; did he
- 6 normally participate in rehearsals?
- 7 A Sometimes Mr. van der Vijver would joint
- 8 rehearsal.
- 9 Q Were there occasions when he did not
- 10 join the rehearsals?
- 11 A Yes, there were.
- 12 Q Was it more common for Mr. van der
- 13 Vijver to not participate in such rehearsals than
- 14 it was for him to participate?
- 15 A Difficult to say. Probably joined more
- 16 than he did not join.
- 17 Q Did Mr. van der Vijver ever indicate any
- 18 reason for his not participating?
- 19 A Not to me.
- 20 Q Are you aware if he ever communicated
- 21 his reasons to anyone else?
- 22 A No.
- 23 Q Mr. Henry, I'd just again like to
- 24 backtrack a moment. I apologize for this. With
- 25 respect to the Taylor Rafferty survey about which 0139
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 you testified earlier today, do you recall if that
- 3 was maintained in the IR Department during your
- 4 tenure there?
- 5 A It would have been retained for a period
- 6 of time. Given that was a snapshot of a point in
- 7 time, I'm not sure how long it would have been
- 8 retained, and the survey was commissioned out of
- 9 the Netherlands, not out of London.
- 10 Q Do you know who it was that commissioned
- 11 that survey?
- 12 A I now remember the name of Bart van der
- 13 Steenstraten's predecessor. His name was Jan van
- 14 den Plas, and Jan dealt with Taylor Rafferty, but
- 15 at my request.

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 85 of 200 PageID:

- 16 Q Even though that survey was commissioned
- 17 out of the Netherlands, do you recall if a copy of
- 18 it was maintained in London?
- 19 A We certainly had access to a copy, yes.
- 20 I don't recall how long it would have been
- 21 retained.
- MR. MACFALL: Plaintiffs would also
- 23 request that the Taylor Rafferty survey be
- 24 produced. It's my understanding that it has not
- 25 been part of the production.

- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 MR. SMITH: We'll take your request
- 3 under advisement.
- 4 MR. MACFALL: Thank you.
- 5 BY MR. MACFALL:
- 6 Q With regard to the Group Strategy
- 7 Presentation that was conducted in London, who was
- 8 responsible for determining who to invite as to
- 9 that presentation?
- 10 A Ultimately I was, but it was a
- 11 combination of either Mike or Gerard and Bart,
- 12 because it was the European and U.K. investor
- 13 community, so it was their invitation list, their
- 14 customer list, and I would -- it went out with my
- 15 name, but I didn't actually go through the list.
- 16 It was just our standard contact list.
- 17 Q Did you review the list before it was
- 18 disseminated?
- 19 A Not in any detail.
- 20 Q I believe you indicated that the
- 21 invitees would include analysts and investors; is
- 22 that correct?
- A Correct, there were equity analysts and
- 24 investors, and there was no journalists or media.
- 25 Q Do you recall if anyone else attended
- 0141
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 those London presentations?
- 3 A The only other people that I'm aware
- 4 attended were -- usually Shell executives who were
- 5 not part of the CMD would also attend, and it
- 6 would give an opportunity for mixing between

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 86 of 200 PageID:

- 7 investors and Shell executives.
- 23923
- 8 Q Do you recall if any analysts based in
- 9 the United States ever attended a Group Strategy
- 10 Presentation in London?
- 11 A I don't recall ever seeing one. There
- 12 was little point in them doing so, because they
- 13 were webcast from London, and they had an
- 14 opportunity the following day in New York to
- 15 follow up face to face. I can't think of one
- 16 actually attending in London.
- 17 Q I believe you indicated that the Group
- 18 Strategy Presentations were conducted in New York
- 19 the following day, typically; is that correct?
- 20 A The Group Strategy Presentation, yes,
- 21 and some, if not all, of the Business Strategy
- 22 Presentations were also followed up in New York.
- Q Were the prepared statements that were
- 24 delivered at the New York presentations the same
- 25 as those that were given in the London
- 0142
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 presentations?
- 3 A Usually exactly the same.
- 4 Q Am I correct that the Shell executives
- 5 who spoke at the London presentation would be the
- 6 same executives to speak at the New York
- 7 presentation?
- 8 A Usually, exactly. There's always a
- 9 possibility that maybe somebody couldn't make it,
- 10 but that was the intent. There may be one
- 11 instance where we had fewer people in New York and
- 12 somebody covered for them.
- 13 Q With respect to the individuals who were
- 14 invited to those presentations, who was
- 15 responsible for deciding who it was that Shell
- 16 invited?
- 17 A To the New York?
- 18 O To the New York.
- 19 A David Sexton would use his contact list
- 20 for the North American market.
- 21 Q Did you review Mr. Sexton's list?
- A The same way I reviewed the European,
- 23 which is not very closely, and I think the

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 87 of 200 PageID:

- 24 invitations would have gone out with David's Aanae
- 25 on them in North America.

0143

- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 Q Were analysts and investors also invited
- 3 to the New York presentation?
- 4 A Yes, they were.
- 5 Q Do you recall if members of the
- 6 financial media attended the New York
- 7 presentations?
- 8 A No, I don't.
- 9 Q No, you don't recall, or --
- 10 A I don't recall members of the financial
- 11 media. We tended to keep the two audiences
- 12 separate in principal.
- 13 Q Was the format for the presentation in
- 14 New York the same as the format for the
- 15 presentation in London?
- 16 A Yes, it was.
- 17 Q Approximately how long did those
- 18 presentations last? And I realize it varied.
- 19 A A Group Strategy Presentation would
- 20 typically be up to three hours, so two and a half
- 21 or three hours, with around an hour for the Q&A.
- Q Were the same potential questions
- 23 utilized in connection with the London
- 24 presentations utilized in connection with the New
- 25 York presentations?

- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 A Yes. There was only one briefing pack
- 3 of questions and answers. However, with the
- 4 benefit of 24 hours between presentations, on the
- 5 journey from Europe to the U.S. we would usually
- 6 brief the executives on how -- first of all, how
- 7 the market had received the presentation, how they
- 8 performed in Q&As, whether there were things that
- 9 were clearly not properly clarified to the market,
- 10 which you can tell if an investor asked the same
- 11 question twice. And we would do briefings and
- 12 updates to help them and say if you get an
- 13 opportunity, this is something you should clarify
- 14 this tomorrow. So we would also, with the help of

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 88 of 200 PageID:

- 15 David Sexton, he would have told us what was 3225
- 16 U.S. market response and therefore are there any
- 17 questions in the U.S. market that were not present
- 18 in the European market. So they would have at
- 19 least a verbal briefing and also be provided with
- 20 reports and other things.
- 21 Q Now, with regard to the briefing that
- 22 occurred during the time between the London
- 23 presentation and the U.S. presentation, you stated
- 24 that Mr. Sexton would apprise the executives of
- 25 what the U.S. market reaction was?
- 0145
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 A Yes.
- 3 Q Okay. Could you please explain for me
- 4 what you mean by "the U.S. market reaction"; is
- 5 that in connection with the presentation that was
- 6 conducted in London?
- 7 A The presentation we conducted in London,
- 8 we always made it user friendly for U.S.
- 9 investors, so unlike a press conference which was
- 10 conducted in the morning, which was 2:00,
- 11 3:00 a.m. there, maybe 4:00 a.m. U.S. time, the
- 12 analyst conferences would usually start 8:00 a.m.
- 13 to 9:00 a.m. New York time, so investors or
- 14 analysts based on the East Coast would be able to
- 15 listen direct to the first presentation, which
- 16 would give them an opportunity to listen, to
- 17 understand, to prepare any questions they might
- 18 have the following day in New York. They were --
- 19 over teleconference facilities, they were able to
- 20 ask questions in the first meeting also, although
- 21 we tended to give preference to U.K. and European
- 22 investors on the first day.
- Sorry. I didn't answer your question.
- 24 U.S. investors would then, during the U.S. working
- 25 day, typically call David Sexton and say can you 0146
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 help me understand or ask David the question on
- 3 the working day while we were still traveling
- 4 over, and usually David would join us for
- 5 breakfast before the meeting in New York, and

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 89 of 200 PageID:

- 6 David would give a verbal briefing to the 23926
- 7 executives of any issues that were "hot" in the
- 8 U.S. market, particularly if they had not been
- 9 discussed the previous day.
- 10 Q Do you specifically recall U.S. analysts
- 11 participating in the London presentations over or
- 12 by telephone?
- 13 A Yes, I do.
- 14 Q Do you recall which analysts
- 15 participated in any of those presentations?
- 16 A I could refer to some of the investment
- 17 hazards they represented. It would be equity
- 18 research. I'm struggling. I can't think of any
- 19 questions that were posed by U.S. investors
- 20 themselves. It was just the research analysts.
- 21 The most common were Merrill Lynch through Steve
- 22 Pfeiffer, Morgan Stanley through Doug Terrison,
- 23 and Paul Ting at UBS, and Mark Gilman at various
- 24 brokerages, and maybe one or two others. In
- 25 several instances, say for Merrill or for UBS,
- 0147
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 they also had a European-based analyst who would
- 3 get effectively preference in terms of questions
- 4 in the first conference, but the U.S.-based
- 5 analyst could come in at a later point.
- 6 Q With regard to the presentations that
- 7 were conducted in New York, were European analysts
- 8 able to participate in that presentation
- 9 telephonically?
- 10 A I believe we webcast, but we didn't
- 11 offer an opportunity for them to take -- to place
- 12 questions, on the rationale that they had had an
- 13 opportunity the previous day.
- 14 Q Is it your understanding that the
- 15 webcast of the New York presentation was
- 16 disseminated worldwide?
- MR. SMITH: We're talking still about
- 18 the Group Strategy Presentation?
- 19 MR. MACFALL: I am. Thank you.
- 20 MR. FERRARA: Disseminated worldwide
- 21 from London or from New York?
- MR. MACFALL: From New York.

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 90 of 200 PageID:

- THE WITNESS: The presentations were 927
- 24 made in New York. The web site is run from
- 25 London, so the feed, the logistics was back into 0148
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 London and then run out through London.
- 3 BY MR. MACFALL:
- 4 Q Just for purposes of clarification, I'm
- 5 not sure that's really responsive. Was -- the
- 6 webcast itself of the presentation conducted in
- 7 New York; are you aware if that was available on a
- 8 worldwide basis?
- 9 A It was available on the Shell.com
- 10 website, so it was available to anybody who had
- 11 access to it.
- MR. FERRARA: Sorry. Were you asking a
- 13 clarifying question as well about where the
- 14 website was sited?
- MR. MACFALL: I was not.
- 16 BY MR. MACFALL:
- 17 Q Now, one of the analysts that you
- 18 identified as participating from time to time
- 19 telephonically in connection with the London
- 20 presentations was a gentleman named Mark Gilman,
- 21 correct?
- A Correct.
- 23 Q And I believe you indicated that he
- 24 worked for various investment banks. Was that
- 25 during your tenure at IR?
- 0149
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 A Two or three when I was in IR, two or
- 3 three different investment or brokerage houses
- 4 when I was in IR.
- 5 Q Can you identify those brokerage houses
- 6 for me.
- 7 A I only remember one, which was First
- 8 Albany.
- 9 Q Do you recall if First Albany had any
- 10 other analysts following Shell during Mr. Gilman's
- 11 tenure there?
- 12 A No, they didn't.
- Q Do you know if First Albany disseminates

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 91 of 200 PageID:

14 analyst reports?

- A It disseminated them, I believe, to
- 16 their U.S. customers, which were their only
- 17 customers. They have no presence in Europe.
- 18 Q Are you familiar with an analyst named
- 19 Arjun Murti?
- A Yes, I am.
- 21 Q During your tenure at IR, do you know
- 22 what brokerage house Mr. Murti worked for?
- 23 A Goldman Sachs in New York.
- 24 Q Did Goldman Sachs -- withdrawn. Did
- 25 Mr. Murti follow Shell as an analyst for Goldman 0150
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 Sachs; do you know?
- 3 A He followed the activities of Shell.
- 4 Q Are you aware if Goldman Sachs had any
- 5 other analysts covering Shell during the time that
- 6 you were at IR?
- 7 A Yes. The prime coverage of Shell was in
- 8 London through a gentleman called Mark Fletcher.
- 9 Q Was that throughout the entire period of
- 10 2001 through 2004?
- 11 A I think Mark was there for most, if not
- 12 all, of that period.
- Q Are you aware of any brokerage houses
- 14 who employed analysts to follow -- withdrawn. Did
- 15 any of the brokerage houses that follow Shell have
- 16 only a single analyst who followed the companies?
- 17 A The large brokerage houses typically
- 18 have two, with the prime always being in London
- 19 for the Shell coverage, maybe not prime in terms
- 20 of the Oil and Gas sector for that brokerage
- 21 house, but the -- if I look at Goldman's, Merrill
- 22 Lynch, UBS, and Lehman Brothers, they all had a
- 23 New York-based Oil and Gas team and they all had a
- 24 London-based Oil and Gas team. The New York team
- 25 brought research and sold it and brokered into the 0151
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 U.S. market, and the European Teams did the same
- 3 for the European Team. Research written in the
- 4 U.S. rarely crossed the ocean, because U.S.-based

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 92 of 200 PageID:

- 5 research, as I mentioned earlier, is entirely 23929
- 6 enumerate, and it's based on the last three months
- 7 and the next three months. Europeans rarely use
- 8 American analyst reports, so -- that's what they
- 9 told us anyway. They use European research if
- 10 they use research at all.
- 11 Q I don't believe that actually answered
- 12 the question, though. Were you aware of any
- 13 brokerage houses that utilized a single analyst to
- 14 follow Shell during your tenure at IR?
- 15 A U.S.-based or Europe or anywhere?
- 16 Q Anywhere.
- 17 A The smaller houses would all typically
- 18 have one lead. Often they had a small team, one
- 19 or two people, but in one location, so -- and ABN
- 20 had one team based in Europe. It was only maybe
- 21 the top ten who would have a team in both
- 22 countries. We had around 40 analysts or brokerage
- 23 houses following Shell.
- Q How about with respect to Royal Dutch?
- 25 A There was -- nobody had separate 0152
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 coverage for Royal Dutch and Shell Transport.
- 3 They all covered the Royal Dutch/Shell Group.
- 4 Q Now, I believe you previously had
- 5 indicated that Mark Gilman was an analyst or, at
- 6 least while an analyst at First Albany, was the
- 7 only analyst covering Royal Dutch/Shell for First
- 8 Albany.
- 9 A That's correct.
- 10 Q First Albany and Mr. Gilman, I believe
- 11 you also stated, were based in the United States?
- 12 A That's correct.
- Q Were you aware of any other brokerage
- 14 houses and analysts based in the United States who
- 15 were the sole -- withdrawn. Are you aware of any
- 16 brokerage houses that covered Royal Dutch/Shell
- 17 where the only analyst covering the companies was
- 18 based in the United States?
- 19 A There were others in addition to Mark,
- 20 such as Karl Forsheimer, I think A.G. Edwards,
- 21 and -- U.S., not Canada. Memory is beginning to

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 93 of 200 PageID:

- 22 fade now. Sorry. But there are -- there were 23930
- 23 other more boutique-style brokerage houses rather
- 24 than those affiliated with an investment bank.
- Q Are you aware if A.G. Edwards 0153
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 disseminated analyst reports regarding Royal
- 3 Dutch/Shell during your tenure at IR?
- 4 A Yes, they did.
- 5 Q Do you know if those analyst reports
- 6 were disseminated in Europe?
- 7 A No, I don't.
- 8 Q In addition to the Group Strategy
- 9 Presentation, I believe you indicated that there
- 10 were also Business Strategy Presentations,
- 11 correct?
- 12 A That's correct.
- 13 Q How often were those presentations
- 14 conducted?
- 15 A For the Major Businesses, roughly every
- 16 two years. For the Minor Businesses, less often.
- 17 Q Was EP one of Royal Dutch/Shell's Major
- 18 Businesses?
- 19 A Yes, it was.
- Q What role, if any, did you have in the
- 21 conduct of the Business Strategy Presentations?
- A First of all, including in the overall
- 23 communication strategy, when was an appropriate
- 24 time to hold such a Business Strategy
- 25 Presentation; and secondly, discussions with the 0154
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 respective Managing Directors, including Phil and
- 3 Judy, because they had an overall responsibility,
- 4 about their role, content and messages that I
- 5 would, uh, I would recommend in that presentation
- 6 at that point in time, and again always based on
- 7 what were the issues in the market or the
- 8 competitive positioning. So I would set it up.
- 9 I would then have a role in review, or I
- 10 and my team would have a role in reviewing the
- 11 material as it was developed, both the
- 12 presentation and the speech and the questions and

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 94 of 200 PageID:

- 13 answers. We'd also usually set up the follow-นิสิ931
- 14 meetings, whether they be one-on-one or lunches or
- 15 other investor events that gave more face time
- 16 between investors and executives.
- 17 O I'd like to come back for a moment to
- 18 the Group Strategy Presentations, and I apologize
- 19 for this. I just realized you had mentioned after
- 20 the presentations that there were a series of
- 21 follow-up meetings; is that correct?
- A Yes.
- 23 Q Where were those follow-up meetings
- 24 conducted?
- 25 A In a variety of locations, but London,
- 0155
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 Edinburgh, Frankfurt, New York, Boston were nearly
- 3 always on the list.
- 4 Q Were the meetings in New York conducted
- 5 after the Strategy Presentation -- the Group
- 6 Strategy Presentations conducted in New York?
- 7 A Yes.
- 8 Q And by "after" I mean immediately after.
- 9 A Immediately after, and the same day
- 10 quite often, yes.
- 11 Q What was the purpose of the follow-up
- 12 meetings?
- 13 A It was to give major investors the
- 14 opportunity to meet with the senior executives
- 15 face to face and ask the questions they didn't
- 16 feel they could or didn't want to ask in the open
- 17 forum. The open forum tended to be dominated by
- 18 equity analysts, who at least in part were
- 19 marketing their own views and opinions in the
- 20 questions themselves, so the buy side, the big buy
- 21 side players who made the real decisions preferred
- 22 to keep their opinions to themselves and ask the
- 23 questions that Shell got later interested in in a
- 24 one-on-one meeting.
- Q And by "open forum" are you referring to 0156
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 the Q&A session?
- 3 A Yes, that everybody could hear.

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 95 of 200 PageID:

- 4 Q Approximately how long did the follow 3032
- 5 meeting that occurred in New York last?
- 6 MR. SMITH: Objection to form.
- 7 THE WITNESS: Each meeting would be
- 8 typically 45 minutes to one hour.
- 9 BY MR. MACFALL:
- 10 Q Was more than one meeting conducted
- 11 following a Group Strategy Presentation?
- 12 A Usually we would do, over a period of up
- 13 to two weeks, 50 plus meetings.
- 14 Q Limiting my inquiry to the United
- 15 States, were those meetings, the 50 or so
- 16 meetings, conducted --
- 17 A Fifteen to 20 in the U.S.
- 18 Q Were those meetings all conducted in New
- 19 York?
- 20 A No.
- O Where else?
- 22 A Boston.
- Q Were they ever conducted in any other
- 24 location?
- 25 A In the United States?
- 0157
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 Q In the United States.
- 3 A As follow-up to a Group Strategy
- 4 Presentation, not that I recall. At other times
- 5 in the year there are other locations in the
- 6 United States that we would visit.
- 7 Q Were certain investors invited to the
- 8 follow-up meetings?
- 9 A Yes.
- 10 Q Who determined who to invite to the
- 11 follow-up meetings?
- 12 A I did.
- 13 Q Did you have a specific criteria that
- 14 you used to formulate that list?
- 15 A Yes.
- 16 Q And could you please explain for me what
- 17 that was.
- 18 A Current holding, current holding as a
- 19 proportion of the total funds under management,
- 20 and whether we knew that investor to be

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 96 of 200 PageID:

- 21 influential in a broader group, in the broader 23933
- 22 investment community.
- 23 Q Why did you utilize that criteria in
- 24 deciding who to invite to the follow-up meetings?
- A We had the three criteria, but the 0158
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 reason for using the three were the senior
- 3 executive time is limited; therefore, we could
- 4 only do so many meetings. Therefore, we should
- 5 leverage that, get the best return. We should
- 6 focus on people with large funds under management,
- 7 and we should focus on your current shareholders,
- 8 because it's easier to keep a shareholder than
- 9 gain a new one. And you should selectively target
- 10 a small proportion of large funds with a low
- 11 holding.
- 12 Q Now, with respect to the first reason
- 13 that you cited concerning the leverage, what did
- 14 you mean by that?
- 15 A I mean if I've got one day of Sir Philip
- 6 Watts' time, I would like him to meet the highest
- 17 proportion of shareholders possible in that time.
- 18 Q Was consideration -- withdrawn. Was one
- 19 of your considerations also generating interest in
- 20 the purchase of Shell in the United States?
- A Our aim was to clarify any questions or
- 22 understanding or interest that the investors had.
- 23 We could never, obviously, recommend purchase of
- 24 Shell shares. That was up to the investor, based
- 25 on the discussion they had and the facts available 0159
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 to them.
- 3 Q Separate and apart from recommending the
- 4 purchase of Shell, was that one of your goals?
- 5 A I would like to think we helped increase
- 6 demand for the Shell shares.
 - Q In connection with these follow-up
- 8 meetings, were multiple investors invited, or were
- 9 they meetings with individual investors?
- 10 MR. SMITH: Objection to form.
- 11 THE WITNESS: It was mainly individual,

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 97 of 200 PageID:

- as a single investment house, but when we visited 4
- 13 the investment house would have an oil and gas
- 14 analyst who is a specialist in Oil and Gas and
- 15 would know the company very well, and he would
- 16 invite portfolio managers from that company. So
- 17 although we would be visiting one investment
- 18 organization or asset management company, we may
- 19 have up to 20 people involved in the meeting,
- 20 different fund managers within that organization
- 21 who might wish to purchase or be interested in
- 22 Shell shares.
- 23 BY MR. MACFALL:
- Q With regard to the format of those
- 25 follow-up meetings, were prepared statements 0160
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 delivered by the Shell executives?
- A Sometimes we took two minutes at the
- 4 start of a meeting just to say -- to recap on the
- 5 main messages from the main presentation. That
- 6 would be anything that was not the main message in
- 7 the presentation, but it was basically open
- 8 question and answer, because that's what investors
- 9 prefer.
- 10 Q Who appeared at the follow-up meetings
- 11 on behalf of Shell?
- 12 A It would vary depending on the schedule,
- 13 but in the U.S. Sir Philip and Judy would usually
- 14 join the meeting, sometimes together, sometimes
- 15 separately. Paul Skinner, as head over
- 16 Downstream, would quite often do meetings in the
- 17 U.S., and from time to time the other Managing
- 18 Directors, including Walter van der Vijver, may do
- 19 the one-on-ones as well.
- Q Was there a particular demand for
- 21 Mr. Watts' appearance at these follow-up meetings?
- A The main demand was for Sir Philip as
- 23 the Chairman of the CMD, which translated in
- 24 America to being the de facto Chief Executive
- 25 Officer.
- 0161
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 MR. MACFALL: Why don't we go off the

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 98 of 200 PageID:

3 record, please.

- 23935
- 4 THE VIDEOGRAPHER: This marks the end of
- 5 Tape 2 in the deposition of Mr. Henry. We are
- 6 going off the record. The time is 3:33 p.m.
- 7 (Whereupon, a short recess was taken.)
- 8 THE VIDEOGRAPHER: This marks the
- 9 beginning of Tape 3 in the deposition of
- 10 Mr. Henry. We are back on the record. The time
- 11 is 3:48 p.m.
- 12 BY MR. MACFALL:
- 13 Q Mr. Henry, I believe you, in addition --
- 14 withdrawn. In addition to the follow-up meetings
- 15 that were conducted in the United States, you
- 16 indicated that there were follow-up meetings
- 17 conducted in Europe as well; is that correct?
- 18 A That is correct.
- 19 Q Do you recall approximately how many
- 20 such meetings were conducted in Europe and the
- 21 U.K.?
- A We do between five and eight days, five
- 23 meetings a day, so 25 to 40 meetings overall.
- Q Now, directing your attention again
- 25 specifically to the follow-up meetings conducted 0162
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 in the United States, in preparation for meeting
- 3 with specific investors, were briefing notes
- 4 provided to Shell senior management?
- 5 A Yes, they were.
- 6 Q Who prepared those materials?
- 7 A My team.
- 8 Q Would that have included Mr. Sexton?
- 9 A Yes, it would.
- 10 Q Were you involved in the preparation of
- 11 those materials?
- 12 A Not really.
- 13 Q Besides Mr. Sexton, was there anyone
- 14 else involved in the preparation of such
- 15 materials?
- 16 A Gerard Paulides and Bart van der
- 17 Steenstraten.
- 18 Q Was Mr. Paulides and Mr. Van der
- 19 Steenstraten involved in the preparation of

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 99 of 200 PageID:

- 20 briefing materials used in connection with the 23936
- 21 follow-up meetings conducted in the United States?
- 22 A Yes, they would prepare some of the
- 23 information.
- Q Conversely, was Mr. Sexton involved in
- 25 the preparation of briefing materials utilized for 0163
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 the follow-up meetings conducted in Europe?
- 3 A Not really.
- 4 Q During the course of the various Group
- 5 Strategy Presentations that were conducted during
- 6 your tenure at IR, do you recall ROACE being
- 7 discussed?
- 8 A During the meetings, yes.
- 9 Q Was that discussed during the
- 10 presentations?
- A It was usually part of the
- 12 presentations. Certainly in December 2001,
- 13 February 2003. That was probably it.
- 14 Q Is depreciation related to the Return On
- 15 Average Capital Employed?
- MR. SMITH: Objection to form.
- 17 MR. MACFALL: I'll rephrase the
- 18 question.
- 19 BY MR. MACFALL:
- Q Is DD&A or Depletion, Depreciation and
- 21 Amortization used in the calculation of ROACE?
- MR. SMITH: Objection to lack of
- 23 foundation.
- 24 THE WITNESS: The depreciation,
- 25 depletion, amortization, DD&A charge is included 0164
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 in the calculation of net income, which is then
- 3 included in the calculation of ROACE.
- 4 BY MR. MACFALL:
- 5 Q You previously stated that proved
- 6 reserves were utilized to calculate DD&A for
- 7 Shell; is that correct?
- 8 A That's correct.
- 9 Q Do you recall if during 2001/2002 any
- 10 analysts asked questions concerning proved

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 100 of 200 PageID:

- 11 reserves in connection with ROACE?
- MR. SMITH: Are you still focused on the
- 13 Group Strategy Presentation?
- 14 MR. MACFALL: I am. Thank you.
- 15 THE WITNESS: No, I don't.
- 16 BY MR. MACFALL:
- 17 Q Was Discounted Cash Flow an issue that
- 18 arose at the Group Strategy Presentations?
- 19 A Do you mean by that the standardized
- 20 measure?
- Q Yes, I do.
- A The supplementary information? No,
- 23 never, because no investor uses that measure, not
- 24 that I'm aware of. Certainly it was never raised
- 25 with me, and most investors had the same view of 0165
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 the usefulness of that measure, as is included in
- 3 the notes by all major oil companies about the
- 4 fact that the measure is not useful.
- 5 Q Did the issue of Discounted Adjusted
- 6 Cash Flow come up during those Group Strategy
- 7 Presentations?
- 8 A No, but DACF did, Debt Adjusted Cash
- 9 Flow.
- 10 Q Are you familiar with the term "Unit
- 11 Finding Cost" or "Unit Finding and Development
- 12 Cost"?
- 13 MR. SMITH: Objection to form. They're
- 14 two different terms.
- 15 THE WITNESS: Yes, I'm familiar with
- 16 both terms.
- 17 BY MR. MACFALL:
- 18 Q Thank you. Is there a difference
- 19 between the two terms?
- A Yes, there is.
- 21 Q Could you describe for me what Unit
- 22 Finding Cost is.
- A The Unit Finding Cost is an indication
- 24 of the cost of finding new resources through
- 25 exploration. It is clearly a dollar figure 0166
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 101 of 200 PageID:

- 2 divided by a barrels figure. The dollar figure i§3938
- 3 relatively easy to calculate, because that comes
- 4 from financial accounts and is included in the
- 5 20-F for exploration expenditure. There is no
- 6 recognized consistent method of calculating the
- 7 volume figure associated with that evaluation,
- 8 because exploration discoveries made in any given
- 9 period do not translate into proved reserves in
- 10 that period, typically. The only consistent
- 11 measure available to anybody looking at the
- 12 industry is proved reserves.
- 13 Q When you say the only consistent measure
- 14 to anybody looking at the industry is proved
- 15 reserves, do you mean that the only meaningful
- 16 basis of comparison or consistent basis of
- 17 comparison between companies is proved reserves?
- 18 MR. SMITH: Objection to form.
- 19 BY MR. MACFALL:
- 20 Q I'll rephrase the question. What is it
- 21 that you mean by your last answer?
- A What I mean is to get a Unit Finding
- 23 Cost, you need to know how many barrels were
- 24 discovered by a particular exploration well.
- 25 There are many different ways of calculating that.
- 0167
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 Each company has their own way, and there is no
- 3 industry standard or guideline for that, and there
- 4 is no requirement to report that number under any
- 5 regulatory regime. Therefore, there is no
- 6 consistent set of information about volumes
- 7 discovered available to the industry.
- 8 Q Are you aware of how Shell calculated
- 9 UFC?
- 10 A Yes, I am.
- 11 Q Explain it to me.
- 12 A Was I aware now or was I aware during
- 13 the class period?
- 14 Q During the class period, 2001 to 2004
- 15 specifically.
- 16 A Just to be clear, my knowledge now is
- 17 considerably more detailed than it was during that
- 18 period; however, my understanding then was

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 102 of 200 PageID:

- 19 exploration expenditure as reported in the 20-E3939
- 20 divided by what we term, in Shell, "Additions to
- 21 Discovered Scope for Recovery." That is a
- 22 classification of hydrogen resource, which
- 23 means -- I'm sorry -- of hydrocarbon resource,
- 24 which means we have observed hydrocarbons, and
- 25 based on the test of the well and the seismic data 0168
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 available, the amount of hydrocarbon that that
- 3 particular well has demonstrated is in the
- 4 reservoir, it is in addition to what we in generic
- 5 terms call our Resource Base. It is not in
- 6 addition to proved reserves until a much later
- 7 stage.
- 8 Q I'm sorry. What you just described for
- 9 me, is that your current understanding, or was
- 10 that your understanding --
- 11 A It was my understanding at the time.
- 12 Q How does that differ, if at all, from
- 13 your current understanding of the term?
- 14 A My current understanding, I would have
- 15 more detail and knowledge of how the volume of
- 16 that particular well is believed to demonstrate,
- 17 how that is calculated in technical terms.
- 18 Q Now, you differentiated earlier between
- 19 Unit Finding Costs and Unit Finding and
- 20 Development Cost. Could you please describe for
- 21 me your understanding, if you have one, of the
- 22 term "Unit Finding Development Cost."
- A My understanding of that term is again
- 24 it's a dollar figure divided by a volume figure,
- 25 and the simplest definition is the capital 0169
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 investment total, including exploration
- 3 expenditure, in a given period, divided by the
- 4 number of barrels, added to proved reserves in
- 5 that period. Now, there are different versions
- 6 including or excluding barrels acquired or
- 7 divested, but that's the basis of the calculation.
- 8 Q Do you recall if Unit Finding and
- 9 Development Costs were discussed during any of the

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 103 of 200 PageID:

- 10 Group Strategy Presentations during your tenua 2940
- 11 IR?
- 12 A I can't recall specifically when, but I
- 13 believe they were addressed.
- 14 Q Generally do you recall if that occurred
- 15 before or after the Reserves Replacement Ratio
 - 6 issue becoming commonly inquired about?
- 17 MR. SMITH: Objection to form.
- 18 BY MR. MACFALL:
- 19 Q Well, I'll rephrase. Using the time
- 20 period which I believe you indicated was early
- 21 2002 in which it became more common for analysts
- 22 and investors to raise questions or ask questions
- 23 about RRR, do you recall if Unit Finding and
- 24 Development Costs were discussed before or
- 25 subsequent to that time?
- 0170
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 A I don't recall a specific instance in a
- 3 Group Strategy Presentation, but more generically
- 4 your question I would have discussed with analysts
- 5 myself.
- 6 MR. FERRARA: Sorry. I think his
- 7 question was: Before or after 2002?
- 8 THE WITNESS: Would have been before
- 9 2002.
- 10 BY MR. MACFALL:
- 11 Q Now, you said not in the context of the
- 12 Group Strategy Presentation, but in discussions
- 13 with analysts, correct?
- 14 A I said I didn't recall a Group Strategy
- 15 Presentation, but I believe it would have been an
- l6 element of the discussions that I would or my team
- 17 would have had with analysts.
- 18 Q We've been discussing at some length the
- 19 formal presentations conducted by Shell. I'd like
- 20 now to ask: Did you, throughout your tenure at
- 21 IR, have individual -- withdrawn. Did you have
- 22 contact with individual analysts on an informal
- 23 basis; for example, had telephone conversations
- 24 with various analysts?
- A Yes, I did.
- 0171

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 104 of 200 PageID:

- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006 23941
- 2 Q Was that a common occurrence during your
- 3 tenure at IR?
- 4 A Almost every day.
- 5 Q Do you recall if there were particular
- 6 analysts who you had more contact with than
- 7 others?
- 8 A There are a group of analysts that are
- 9 highly ranked in terms of the influence they have
- 10 over the market, and I, as head of Group Investor
- 11 Relations, I would focus the time I spent on the
- 12 higher ranked analysts.
- 13 Q Could you identify those individuals for
- 14 me, please.
- 15 A Based in the U.K., they would include
- 16 Neil Perry, who was then at UBS Warburg; Jeremy
- 17 Eldon, who was then at Lehman Brothers; J.J.
- 18 Trainer, who was then at Deutsche Bank; Rod
- 19 McLean, who was then at CSFB; Mark Ianotti, who
- 20 was part Citi Group, part Merrill Lynch; John
- 21 Rigby, who was then at Commerce Bank. And I would
- 22 keep some level of personal relationship with one
- 23 or two of the U.S.-based analysts, although that
- 24 was primarily handled by David Sexton.
- The ones that I would retain contact
- 0172
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 with would be Doug Terrison at Morgan Stanley;
- 3 Arjun Murti, Goldman Sachs; Steve Pfeiffer,
- 4 Merrill Lynch; Mark Flannery, Credit Suisse. And
- 5 they were the primary contacts that I can recall.
- 6 Q I'd just like to clarify. With respect
- 7 to certain of the investors that you identified as
- 8 being located in the U.K., they were U.K. -- I'm
- 9 sorry -- analysts located in the U.K. These were
- 10 analysts that worked out of the U.K. for companies
- 11 based in the United States, correct; for example,
- 12 Lehman Brothers, Citi Group, Merrill?
- 13 MR. SMITH: Objection to form.
- 14 THE WITNESS: I don't know their
- 15 corporate structure, but their corporate head
- 16 office, of the ones you just mentioned, were I
- 17 assume in New York. The lead analyst coverage in

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 105 of 200 PageID:

- all those cases was either clearly in London or 23942
- 19 was clearly disputed within the organization in
- 20 question, but we tended to focus on those that
- 21 made a difference where our share price was set,
- 22 which was London.
- 23 BY MR. MACFALL:
- Q Now, with respect to the analysts that
- 25 you identified in the United States, do you recall 0173
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 approximately how frequently you spoke with those
- 3 individuals?
- 4 A I would aim to speak with them when I
- 5 was visiting the U.S., but it would not be that
- 6 often that I would speak with those individuals.
- 7 I would usually restrict it to a particular issue.
- 8 I remember just following up particular research
- 9 reports that they may have written. That would be
- 10 me proactively contacting. Reactively, I would
- 11 get calls from their London-based analysts anyway
- 12 on a regular basis, and from the U.S.-based
- 13 analysts, if ever David Sexton were not available,
- 14 they would contact me direct.
- 15 Q Did you speak to various analysts every
- 16 day during your tenure at IR?
- 17 MR. SMITH: Objection to form.
- 18 THE WITNESS: Pretty much every day I
- 19 would talk to somebody, because I was there partly
- 20 to answer the phone when it rang.
- 21 BY MR. MACFALL:
- 22 Q I believe you stated that Unit Finding
- 23 and Development Cost was something that arose
- 24 during the course of certain of your conversations
- 25 with analysts prior to 2002; is that correct?
- 0174
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 A Indeed.
- 3 Q Okay. Do you remember how frequently
- 4 that issue arose?
- 5 A The main way in which it would have
- 6 arisen was I was new to the whole concept of
- 7 equity research and marketing when I took over as
- 8 head of Investor Relations, so I spent time with

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 106 of 200 PageID:

- 9 some of the analysts, understanding how they 100043
- 10 at a company, how they value it, and what it is
- 11 that is important to them, so -- to understand the
- 12 metrics, so it was one of the metrics that we
- 13 would have discussed in that period. So I was
- 14 pretty aware of how an analyst looked at the
- 15 company. It was not separately one of the key
- 16 up-front metrics that was included in a
- 17 presentation or discussion, but it could lead to a
- 18 question. You could get questions on it.
- 19 Q So am I correct then that during the
- 20 period in which you first started working for IR,
- 21 it was actually the analysts that apprised you of
- 22 the significance of UFDC?
- MR. SMITH: Objection to form. I don't
- 24 think that's what he said.
- THE WITNESS: The analysts would
- 0175
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 describe to me how they individually looked at a
- 3 company and how they built a model and how they
- 4 then apprised different metrics. UFDC was one of
- 5 them that they talked about.
- 6 BY MR. MACFALL:
- 7 Q How about ROACE; was that one of the
- 8 metrics that they talked about?
- 9 A Yes, it was.
- 10 Q Do you recall discussing ROACE with
- 11 various analysts during one-on-one communications
- 12 with them?
- 13 MR. SMITH: Objection to form.
- 14 THE WITNESS: In general, yes, I do.
- 15 Not specifically, but it was a regular topic of
- 16 conversation.
- 17 BY MR. MACFALL:
- 18 Q Are you aware if the market perceived
- 19 ROACE as being an important metric with regard to
- 20 the performance of a petroleum company?
- 21 MR. SMITH: Objection to form.
- THE WITNESS: My impression was that
- 23 they did regard ROACE as an important indicator,
- 24 although not all of them agreed on this.

- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 BY MR. MACFALL:
- 3 Q Do you know how Royal Dutch/Shell
- 4 compared to BP during your tenure at IR in terms
- 5 of ROACE?
- 6 A We were better than BP for all that
- 7 period if calculated on the basis of excluding
- 8 premiums paid for acquisitions in your capital
- 9 employ. BP had their own calculation of ROACE on
- 10 which, of course, they were best. We used the
- 11 standard information, the standard definition,
- 12 same as Exxon or anybody else, and we were
- 13 exceeding BP in all years.
- 14 Q How about with respect to ExxonMobil?
- 15 A We were behind ExxonMobil most of the
- 16 time. There may have been a short period when we
- 17 were equal to or slightly better than Exxon. Over
- 18 the period, the gap widened.
- 19 Q And by that do you mean that there was a
- 20 more significant difference between Exxon and
- 21 Royal Dutch/Shell in terms of ROACE?
- A The end of the period a more significant
- 23 difference than the beginning of the period, yes.
- Q Thank you.
- Now, in connection with the follow-up
- 0177
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 meetings that occurred after the Group Strategy
- 3 Presentations, do you recall if you received
- 4 telephone calls from investors concerning those
- 5 meetings?
- 6 A At what point; before or after the
- 7 meetings were held?
- 8 Q Do you recall if you received telephone
- 9 calls prior to the meetings from investors who
- 10 expressed any specific areas of interest
- 11 concerning Shell?
- MR. SMITH: Objection to form.
- 13 THE WITNESS: I personally don't recall
- 14 any specific calls to me, but we used to make
- 15 calls to them to ask them if there were any
- 16 specific issues or concerns that they wanted to

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 108 of 200 PageID:

- 17 raise. That was part of our briefing process for3945
- 18 the executives.
- 19 BY MR. MACFALL:
- 20 Q During the course of those follow-up
- 21 meetings, do you recall if UFDC was discussed
- 22 throughout the time of your tenure at IR?
- 23 MR. SMITH: Objection to form. He
- 24 didn't say those were follow-up meetings.
- 25 THE WITNESS: In those follow-up
- 0178
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 meetings it's quite likely from time to time that
- 3 UFDC was discussed, because many subjects were
- 4 discussed. For some investors it was something
- 5 they were interested in; for others it wasn't.
- 6 BY MR. MACFALL:
- 7 Q Do you recall if ROACE was discussed
- 8 typically at those follow-up meetings?
- 9 A More regularly than UFDC, it was a more
- 10 common subject of questions and discussion.
- 11 Q I believe you testified earlier today
- 12 that in early 2002 investor inquiries concerning
- 13 the Reserves Replacement Ratio first became more
- 14 common following BP's setting of the agenda that
- 15 included that metric; is that correct?
- MR. SMITH: Objection to form. That
- 17 wasn't his testimony.
- 18 THE WITNESS: I said --
- 19 BY MR. MACFALL:
- 20 Q I'll withdraw the question. Did there
- 21 come a time in 2002 when investors began to ask
- 22 more frequently about Shell's Reserves Replacement
- 23 Ratio?
- MR. SMITH: Objection to form. Again
- 25 that's not his testimony.
- 0179
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- THE WITNESS: I think I mentioned
- 3 earlier that 2002, during the year, the issue of
- 4 reserves replacement became a more common subject
- 5 of discussion. It would initially be kicked off
- 6 by a round of reported reserves additions for the
- 7 year of 2001, which were reported between February

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 109 of 200 PageID:

- 8 and May 2002, but also informed, as I mention 20046
- 9 earlier, by the BP's impending knowledge of their
- 10 production problems several months before they
- 11 actually admitted them, and the way they were
- 12 moving the market ahead of the ultimate Russian
- 13 deal towards thinking about access to resource
- 14 base being a key competitor differentiator rather
- 15 than ability to generate growth.
- 16 BY MR. MACFALL:
- 17 Q Do you recall what BP's Reserves
- 18 Replacement Ratio was at about that time? And by
- 19 "that time" I mean early 2002.
- A I don't recall exactly, but if my memory
- 21 serves me right, it was well above one hundred
- 22 percent.
- Q Do you recall what Royal Dutch/Shell's
- 24 Reserves Replacement Ratio was during that same
- 25 period?
- 0180
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 A At the end of 2001 it was below
- 3 100 percent. The end of 2002 it was 117 percent,
- 4 but during that year we had acquired Enterprise
- 5 Oil, and the market to a certain extent
- 6 differentiated between acquisitions activity
- 7 through organic type investments.
- 8 Q Now, specifically with regard to 2001,
- 9 while it's below 100 percent, do you recall
- 10 approximately what it was during that year or for
- 11 that year?
- 12 A I'm sorry. I don't -- I don't,
- 13 actually.
- 14 Q With regard to 2002, excluding the
- 15 Enterprise acquisition, do you recall what Shell's
- 16 organic Reserves Replacement Ratio was?
- 17 A I believe it was around 50 percent.
- 18 Q Do you recall what BP's Reserves
- 19 Replacement Ratio was for 2002?
- A It would have been over a hundred
- 21 percent, but in the process of announcing these
- 22 data, that was the time at which the BP Russia
- 23 deal was announced with very large resource
- 24 volumes associated with it. I don't think it was

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 110 of 200 PageID:

- 25 included in that number at the time, but that 23947 0181
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 overshadowed the numbers at the time.
- 3 Q Do you recall what Exxon's Reserves
- 4 Replacement Ratio was during 2002?
- A It would have been between 100 and
- 6 120 percent, because that's what they manage it to
- 7 every year.
- 8 Q At the time that investors and analysts
- 9 began to inquire with respect to Shell's Reserves
- 10 Replacement Ratio, do you recall if anyone asked
- 11 why Shell's RRR was lower than its peers?
- 12 A I don't recall a specific instance, but
- 13 I'm sure I was asked that question.
- 14 Q Do you recall if that topic was
- 15 addressed in any prepared statements that were
- 16 drafted during that period?
- 17 A We began to ensure that that question
- 18 and answer was prepared for each of the type of
- 19 events that I was talking about earlier, the
- 20 quarterly results or mid-year or press conference.
- 21 I would expect Q&A to be prepared around the issue
- 22 of reserve replacement.
- Q Was the inclusion of that topic based on
- 24 inquiries that you were receiving in IR?
- A In part, yes. It was one topic amongst 0182
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 many.
- 3 Q Specifically with regard to that "one
- 4 topic amongst many," do you recall what kinds of
- 5 inquiries you were receiving during that period?
- 6 A Very similar to the question that you've
- 7 just posed: Why was Shell's performance less good
- 8 than the competitors?
- 9 Q Did you have an understanding as to why
- 10 Shell's performance concerning RRR was less good
- 11 than its peers?
- 12 A My understanding improved over that
- 13 period, from that period on. It's difficult to
- 14 reconstruct exactly what I would have seen as
- 15 being an understanding, but primarily it was about

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 111 of 200 PageID:

- investment levels in the company which lead **3216**
- 17 projects, which lead to proved reserves, and how
- 18 successful that new investment would be or how
- 19 successful the company had been at generating new
- 20 opportunities in which to invest, whether it be
- 21 through exploration or through negotiation with
- 22 governments.
- Q Now, with regard to Reserves Replacement
- 24 Ratio -- withdrawn. Are you aware of company-wide
- 25 efforts to reduce costs at Shell during the late
- 0183
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 nineties and early 2000s?
- 3 A Yes, I am.
- 4 Q As part of that effort did Shell reduce
- 5 its capital expenditure in its Upstream
- 6 activities?
- A Not strictly as part of that effort.
- 8 The effort to reduce cost was about operating
- 9 expenditures, not about capital expenditures, but
- 10 in the same period capital investment was also
- 11 reduced following the collapse in the oil price in
- 12 1998.
- 13 Q Are you aware if that reduction in
- 14 capital expenditure in Shell's Upstream activities
- 15 adversely impacted Shell's Reserves Replacement
- 16 Ratio?
- 17 A Am I or was I then?
- 18 Q Are you now?
- 19 A Am I now? Yes, I do believe that to be
- 20 the case now.
- Q Were you aware of that then?
- A I suspected that might be the case then.
- 23 I was not -- I did not have access to as much
- 24 information at that point as I do now.
- Q Do you recall if there was pressure from 0184
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 Shell's management to increase the company's RRR
- 3 to improve its competitive position relative to
- 4 its peers relative to the period of 2001 through
- 5 2004?
- 6 MR. SMITH: Objection to form.

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 112 of 200 PageID:

- THE WITNESS: I'd probably look for a²³⁹⁴⁹
- 8 definition of "pressure" there. The management
- 9 was aware, as we go through the period, of a
- 10 competitive disadvantage as perceived in the
- 11 market, and any management, in that situation,
- 12 will look to drive the organization to perform
- 13 better in that area, so if that equals pressure,
- 14 that's pressure that leaders would place on the
- 15 organization to perform better in a given area.
- 16 BY MR. MACFALL:
- 17 Q Did senior management in Shell, in fact,
- 18 drive the operating units to improve performance
- 19 in connection with the RRR during that period?
- 20 A 2001 to 2004?
- 21 Q Yes.
- A Not directly, because it's not something
- 23 you manage directly. They would be looking to
- 24 develop projects and to invest maybe at higher
- 25 levels, and we did see an increase in the 0185
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 investment levels over that period, because it's
- 3 investments in projects that ultimately lead to
- 4 the recognition of proved reserves.
- 5 Q Did management also drive the various
- 6 Businesses to improve ROACE during the period of
- 7 2001 to 2004?
- 8 A Not to improve; to sustain.
- 9 Q Do you recall what the ROACE level for
- 10 Shell was, approximately, during that period?
- 11 MR. SMITH: Objection to form.
- 12 THE WITNESS: What the group was
- 13 targeting was a particular rate of return or a
- 14 reference oil price, so it was known as a
- 15 "normalized ROACE," because we adjusted the
- 16 results back to that reference price. The
- 17 reference price at the beginning of the period and
- 18 the reference return on capital was 14 percent at
- 19 \$14 oil. Over the period of time, that
- 20 expectation was relaxed a little until it was I
- 21 think 13 or even 12 percent at \$16 a barrel for
- 22 the Group, and there was subsidiary targets for
- 23 the individual Businesses which were consistent

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 113 of 200 PageID:

24 with the Group level targets.

23950

0186

- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 BY MR. MACFALL:
- 3 Q Do you recall what actions were
- 4 undertaken by senior management in order to drive
- 5 the Businesses to maintain ROACE at those levels?
- 6 MR. FERRARA: Sorry. I usually delay to
- 7 let Colby object to the form of the question, but
- 8 since he has let the word "drive" by in the prior
- 9 question, I will object to form, because I don't
- 10 know what "drive" means, and I think you're going
- 11 to have to define it for the witness.
- MR. MACFALL: Actually, I don't know
- 13 what that term (something) the witness; however,
- 14 he used the term "drive" at some point, so I'm
- 15 using his words, but I'll ask a different
- 16 question.
- 17 BY MR. MACFALL:
- 18 Q Did senior management undertake any
- 19 actions to cause the various Businesses at Royal
- 20 Dutch/Shell to maintain its ROACE during the
- 21 period of 2001 to 2004?
- A The general steps taken were cost
- 23 management, the operating cost management with an
- 24 expectation that these would be reduced steadily
- 25 over time. Investment levels were budgeted below 0187
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 what the company could possibly spend to force
- 3 choices in investment and discipline and ensure
- 4 that only the best projects were selected.
- 5 Various divestments were made. During the period
- 6 two public acquisitions were made that I mentioned
- 7 earlier, plus two major acquisitions of assets,
- 8 one in Germany and one in the United States,
- 9 Downstream assets, from Chevron/Texaco in the U.S.
- 10 and from DEA in Germany. And the combination of
- 11 the change in the portfolio, the acquisitions, the
- 12 divestments, limiting the capital investment and
- 13 the reduction of cost was an overall package that
- 14 management was using to -- with the intent of

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 114 of 200 PageID:

- 15 keeping the return on capital at a competitive 23951
- 16 level.
- 17 Q Do you recall ever having conversations
- 18 with Mr. Watts concerning keeping ROACE at a
- 19 competitive level during the period of 2001 to
- 20 2004?
- 21 A I remember various conversations. I
- 22 couldn't place them at a particular time.
- 23 Q Were the various actions that you just
- 24 enumerated ever discussed between yourself and
- 25 Mr. Watts?
- 0188
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 A Yes, they were.
- 3 Q Do you recall having any conversations
- 4 with Ms. Boynton during the period of 2001 to 2004
- 5 concerning Shell's efforts to meet or maintain
- 6 ROACE?
- 7 A Again yes, I had several discussions.
- 8 Can't place any specific in time.
- 9 Q Do you recall if those discussions also
- 10 involved some of the activities you described in
- 11 connection with management's effort to maintain
- 12 ROACE?
- 13 A Yes, they were.
- 14 Q Do you have any conversations with
- 15 Mr. van der Vijver during that same period, 2001
- 16 through or until 2004?
- 17 A Yes.
- 18 Q Concerning management's efforts with
- 19 regard to ROACE?
- A Yes, I did.
- 21 Q And again do you recall generally if
- 22 those conversations involved senior management's
- 23 efforts in connection with the maintenance of
- 24 ROACE during that period?
- A Yes, they did.
- 0189
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 Q And just sort of backtracking, with
- 3 respect to Reserves Replacement Ratio do you
- 4 recall having any conversations with Mr. Watts --
- 5 withdrawn. Did you ever discuss Shell's Reserves

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 115 of 200 PageID: 23952

- Replacement Ratio with Mr. Watts? 6
- 7 A Yes, I did.
- 8 Q Do you recall approximately the first
- time you discussed that issue with him?
- 10 A It would have been in 2002, I believe,
- 11 but more likely the latter part of the year.
- 12 Q Do you recall the substance of your
- 13 conversation with Mr. Watts concerning Reserves
- Replacement Ratio in the latter part of 2002? 14
- 15 Yes. The substance of my discussions
- 16 with Phil were almost always looking forward at
- expectations, how are we going to perform against
- 18 what the market would either like to see us do or
- 19 expect us to do, so my discussions with Sir Philip
- 20 or Judy and/or Walter would have been about the
- future and what would our expectations be and what
- would then triggers be, such as major investment 22
- 23 decisions or investment levels, are they
- 24 appropriate.
- 25 Q Do you recall any occasions when 0190
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- conversations regarding expectations about
- reserves replacement were impacted by past actions
- or past decisions to book reserves? 4
- 5 MR. SMITH: Objection to form.
- THE WITNESS: From time to time during 6
- 7 mainly 2003, discussions with Walter indicated
- that one of the reasons going forward we would not
- book so many -- book as many reserves as we might
- 10 like, is that, on certain projects, reserves had
- already been recognized.
- 12 BY MR. MACFALL:
- 13 Q Do you remember specifically which
- 14 projects you discussed with Mr. van der Vijver?
- I remember or recall discussing in early 15
- 2003, Block 18 in Angola, Ormen Lange, Ehra, and
- I'm not sure if it was then or at a later stage,
- 18 Gorgon in Australia.
- 19 Q Do you recall which of those various
- projects you first discussed with Mr. van der 20
- 21 Vijver in connection with the Reserves Replacement
- Ratio issue?

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 116 of 200 PageID:

- 23 MR. SMITH: Objection to form. 23953
- 24 THE WITNESS: There was only four
- 25 projects. I recall discussing three of them at 0191
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 the same time.
- 3 BY MR. MACFALL:
- 4 Q And which three were those?
 - A The first three I mentioned. I'm not
- 6 sure if we discussed Gorgon at the time. I don't
- 7 recall.

- 8 Q How did the issue of prior bookings of
- 9 reserves in connection with those projects come up
- 10 with Mr. van der Vijver?
- 11 A The specific discussion that I had came
- 12 up when I was accompanying Walter on one or more
- 13 meetings in February 2003 which were follow-up to
- 14 the Group Strategy Presentation in London, and we
- 15 had just reported a low Reserves Replacement Ratio
- 16 for 2002, particularly in the area of gas, I
- 17 think, and I was asking Walter what the
- 18 expectations were for particular projects where I
- 19 knew we were making progress or likely to make
- 20 progress in the near future, in the next 12 to 18
- 21 months, so I was looking for where are we going
- 22 and then what is it that Walter could share that I
- 23 could build into what we said externally, Q&As or
- 24 whatever the format.
- Q Now, specifically with respect to Block 0192
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 18 in Angola, at the time you discussed --
- 3 withdrawn. Did you specifically discuss that
- 4 project with Mr. van der Vijver?
- 5 A I recall it being mentioned.
- 6 Q Do you recall what it was that he said
- 7 in connection with Block 18?
- A The only thing I recall over the year
- 9 projects was that some reserves had been booked
- 10 already.
- 11 Q Do you recall if, at the time of that
- 12 conversation with Mr. van der Vijver, any of those
- 13 projects had reached final investment decision?

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 117 of 200 PageID:

- A The three I mentioned, Ehra, Ormen Lange4
- 15 or Block 18, were all either imminent or had
- 16 already taken -- I think Block 18 had already
- 17 taken FID at that time, and Ormen Lange and Ehra
- 18 -- Ormen Lange was about to take FID; Ehra was
- 19 about that time.
- 20 Q Are you aware -- withdrawn. Did you
- 21 learn whether or not reserves were booked at
- 22 either Block 18, Ormen Lange or Ehra prior to the
- 23 time that FID was reached with respect to those
- 24 projects?
- A I had been advised by staff in EP on I 0193
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 believe Ehra and Block 18. I don't recall Ormen
- 3 Lange I was aware of.
- 4 Q Do you recall when you were so advised?
- 5 A On Ormen Lange?
- 6 Q I'm sorry. With regard to Block 18 and
- 7 Ehra.
- 8 A Block 18, it was sometime during 2002,
- 9 and I or my team were asking questions of EP about
- 10 again events we knew were about to happen, such as
- 11 the Final Investment Decision, and trying to
- 12 understand what the impact of those events would
- 13 be on reported information.
- 14 Q Do you recall who it is that --
- 15 withdrawn. Was there a particular contact at EP
- 16 who responded to your inquiries concerning Block
- 17 18 and Ehra?
- 18 A We had two contacts. One was our normal
- 19 focal point, which was Rhea Hamilton, and the
- 20 other was to go directly to the Resources or
- 21 Reserves Coordinator, who was John Pay. Sometimes
- 22 Rhea responded. Sometimes John Pay responded.
- Q Do you recall how it is that you learned
- 24 that reserves had been booked at Block 18 and Ehra
- 25 prior to FID being reached?
- 0194
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 A I can't say exactly, but I believe it
- 3 was an e-mail from either Rhea or John.
- 4 Q Do you recall how the issue first came

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 118 of 200 PageID:

- 5 up? 23955
- 6 A I believe it would be my team asking for
- 7 advice or just information around what we knew8 were upcoming events, such as Final Investment
- 9 Decision on Block 18.
- 10 Q Was the interest in connection with what
- 11 reserves, what proved reserves could be booked
- 12 upon reaching FID of Block 18?
- 13 A The interest in any project would be
- 14 around the metrics, the investment, the production
- 5 level and the reserves that would be booked.
- 16 Q And by "reserves" are you specifically
- 17 referencing proved --
- 18 A Proved reserves, yes. We would also ask
- 19 about total resource to be developed, on the
- 20 ground that proved reserves is easily considered
- 21 to be less than the total resource.
- THE REPORTER: On the ground that proved
- 23 reserves would be less than what?
- 24 THE WITNESS: The total resource that
- 25 will be developed by a given project.
- 0195
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 BY MR. MACFALL:
- B Q Do you specifically recall who was
- 4 contacted at EP -- withdrawn. Do you specifically
- 5 recall who was contacted with regard to the amount
- 6 of reserves that could be booked upon Block 18
- 7 reaching FID?
- 8 MR. SMITH: Objection to form.
- 9 THE WITNESS: No, I don't.
- 10 BY MR. MACFALL:
- 11 Q Do you recall what you were told with
- 12 regard to the booking of reserves at -- proved
- 13 reserves at Block 18 upon reaching FID?
- 14 A To be specific about -- the timing had
- 15 been told, but eventually I understood that some
- 16 reserves had been booked, more reserves could
- 17 potentially be booked at Final Investment
- 18 Decision, and that total number was still
- 19 considerably less than the total resource
- 20 associated with the asset, the Shell share of that
- 21 asset.

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 119 of 200 PageID:

- Q Was Block 18 a joint venture? 23956
- A Yes, it was.
- Q Do you know who Shell's joint venture
- 25 partners were at Block 18?

- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 A It was BP. It was a 50/50 joint
- 3 venture.
- 4 Q Were you aware if BP was to book proved
- 5 reserves upon Block 18 reaching FID?
- 6 A No, I was not aware.
- 7 Q Was that a concern at IR, that BP might
- 8 book proved reserves upon FID of Block 18 and that
- 9 Shell could not book a concomitant amount of
- 10 proved reserves because of prior booking?
- 11 A A general concern at IR would be
- 12 competitors disadvantage, which was partly our
- 13 reason for the questions in the first place, to
- 14 understand where we were likely to be positioned
- 15 before it happened, and so building up those
- 16 sources of information could create a general
- 17 concern. On one relatively small project, it was
- 18 not the end of the world for IR.
- 19 Q Were you concerned that investors would
- 20 want to know why Shell was booking less proved
- 21 reserves than BP at FID with regard to Block 18?
- MR. MORSE: Objection to form.
- 23 THE WITNESS: Not really, because if I
- 24 remember rightly, we're talking less than point
- 25 two percent of the total proved reserves. That is 0197
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 not material for investors in and of itself.
- 3 BY MR. MACFALL:
- 4 Q And that .2 percent that you're
- 5 referring to, that was what had been booked prior
- 6 to FID?
- A No, that .2 percent was approximately
- 8 what had been booked prior to FID, as I understood
- 9 at the time.
- 10 Q How about with respect to Ehra; do you
- 11 have any understanding of the volume of proved
- 12 reserves that were booked prior to FID in

file:///Cl/Documents%20and%20Settings/daustin/Desktop/Deposition%20Transcripts/101606sh.txt Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 120 of 200 PageID: 13 connection with that project? 14 My understanding was that was a higher 15 number and that the number may be reduced, but the FID was taken roughly at the end of 2002 anyway. Did you have an understanding as to when 17 18 the reserves were -- withdrawn. Do you know when proved reserves were first booked in connection with Ehra? 20 21 A No, I don't, or I don't recall anyway, 22 no. 23 Do you recall the volume of proved O reserves that were booked prior to FID in 25 connection with Ehra? 0198 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006 2 A If I recall correctly, it was around 160 million barrels. 3 4 Q Are you aware of the proportion of total proved reserves at Ehra that that 160 million barrels represented? 6 7 A About 0.7 percent. Q I believe you also mentioned Gorgon as 8 being a project where you ultimately learned that reserves were booked prior to FID; is that correct? 11 12 A It is a project I did ultimately learn, 13 yes. 14 When did you first become aware or first 15 learn that reserves were booked at Gorgon prior to 16 FID? It was indicated during that later part

- 17
- of 2002 in similar correspondence to that we
- 19 discussed for the other, the other fields.
- 20 Q Do you recall the volume of proved
- 21 reserves that was booked in connection with Gorgon
- prior to FID? 22
- 23 Yes, I do. Α
- 24 And what is that volume, sir?
- 25 A I believe 557 million barrels.
- 0199
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 O Do you recall if you discussed the
- booking of those proved reserves at Gorgon with

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 121 of 200 PageID:

4 Mr. van der Vijver?

- 23958 A I don't recall if I discussed Gorgon
- with Mr. van der Vijver. The information had come
- to me through I think John Pay.
- Q Do you recall approximately --8
- 9 withdrawn. Do you recall approximately when it
- 10 was that you learned from Mr. Pay that
- 11 557 million barrels had been booked in connection
- with Gorgon prior to FID?
- 13 MR. SMITH: Objection to form.
- THE WITNESS: Second half 2002. 14
- 15 BY MR. MACFALL:
- Q Did you ever discuss the booking of 16
- proved reserves prior to FID with Mr. Watts? 17
- 18 A Yes, I did.
- 19 Q Do you recall when you first discussed
- that topic with Mr. Watts? 20
- 21 A I don't really recall discussing it
- 22 before the December 2003/January '04 period.
- Would that be in connection with Project 23
- Rockford? 24
- 25 A Yes, it would.
- 0200
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 Q Do you recall if you ever discussed the
- premature -- withdrawn. Excluding Project
- Rockford, do you recall if you ever discussed the
- 5 booking of proved reserves at Block 18 prior to
- 6 FID with Ms. Boynton?
- 7 A I don't recall discussing it with Judy
- 8 Boynton.
- With regard to Ehra, do you recall
- discussing the booking of proved reserves prior to
- FID with Mr. Watts, excluding Project Rockford? 11
- 12 A No.
- 13 Do you recall having any such
- conversations with Ms. Boynton, excluding Project
- Rockford? 15
- 16 A No.
- 17 Do you recall discussing the booking of
- proved reserves at Gorgon prior to FID with
- 19 Mr. Watts, excluding Project Rockford?
- 20 I was aware at some point that one of

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 122 of 200 PageID:

- 21 the reasons that reserves had been booked at 23959
- 22 Gorgon at that time was the existence of
- 23 negotiations and a Letter of Intent for LNG sales,
- 24 and I do not recall what my source of that
- 25 information was. It may have been Mr. Watts. 0201
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 Q Do you recall approximately when that
- 3 was, when that conversation that may have been
- 4 with Mr. Watts occurred?
- 5 MR. SMITH: Objection to form.
- 6 THE WITNESS: I'm not sure I do. I was
- 7 aware broadly during 2003 of that, and it's
- 8 possible that Sir Philip was one of my sources.
- 9 It's also possible it could have been somebody
- 10 else. It would not have been Judy.
- 11 BY MR. MACFALL:
- 12 Q Do you know who was head of EP at the
- 13 time the reserves were booked at Gorgon?
- 14 A 1997?
- 15 Q Yes, that's correct.
- 16 A The straight answer is: Nobody. There
- 17 was no accountable Chief Executive of the EP
- 18 Business.
- 19 Q Was there a member -- withdrawn. Did
- 20 Mr. Watts have a role with regard to the operation
- 21 of EP during that period?
- A Yes, he did. That was a Business
- 23 Committee that was responsible for running the EP
- 24 Business, and Mr. Watts was a member of that
- 25 committee. He was actually technically the most 0202
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 senior member of that committee, because he was a
- 3 Managing Director whose sphere of responsibility
- 4 included EP, but he was not the Chief Executive
- 5 running EP. He had no executive authority over
- 6 the activities of the EP Business in 1997.
- 7 Q How is it that you know he had no
- 8 executive authority during that period in
- 9 connection with EP?
- 10 A Because the same -- I was working in
- 11 Downstream at the time, and the same Business

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 123 of 200 PageID:

- 12 Committee construct was being used to manage 1160
- 13 Downstream. We had the same structure with Steve
- 14 Miller as the Managing Director with
- 15 responsibility for Oil Products, and it drove us
- 16 all nuts, because he had no executive authority.
 - Q How is it that you know that the same
- 18 organization was in place with regard to EP?
- 19 A The Governance Guide in the Group at the
- 20 time indicated that the same governance structure
- 21 applied to each of the Businesses.
- Q Are you familiar with the ARPR process?
- A Yes, I am.

- MR. FERRARA: I notice that you're now
- 25 moving into a new area, and since we're going to 0203
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 be here tomorrow, is there a chance we might want
- 3 to wrap up around 5:00 to give the witness a rest
- 4 and be fresher for tomorrow?
- 5 MR. MACFALL: Why don't we go off the
- 6 record and let's discuss that.
- 7 MR. FERRARA: Okay.
- 8 THE VIDEOGRAPHER: We are going off the
- 9 record. The time is 4:53 p.m.
- 10 (Whereupon, a short recess was taken.)
- 11 THE VIDEOGRAPHER: We are back on the
- 12 record. The time is 5:10 p.m.
- 13 BY MR. MACFALL:
- 14 Q Mr. Henry, prior to the break I was
- 15 asking if you were familiar with the ARPR process
- 16 at Shell.
- 17 A Yes, I am familiar.
- 18 Q And could you please describe that
- 19 process for me.
- 20 A It stands for the Annual Review of
- 21 Petroleum Resources, and it's an annual exercise
- 22 collecting all information on the petroleum
- 23 resource and resource base throughout the company,
- 24 including proved reserves but not limited to
- 25 proved reserves. And data is collected from a 0204
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 field or an asset level upwards aggregated in

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 124 of 200 PageID:

- 3 countries, aggregated in geographical regions, 20061
- 4 eventually aggregated at the global level. It
- 5 takes place at the end of the year with returns at
- 6 the global level in mid January, and the data and
- 7 information that is provided in that process is
- 8 used, amongst other things, as the basis for the
- 9 reserves related reporting in the 20-F, the
- 10 supplementary oil and gas information reporting.
- 11 Q The 20-F is a form that's filed with the
- 12 SEC in the United States, correct?
- 13 A That is correct.
- 14 Q Are proved reserves specifically
- 15 reported in the 20-F?
- 16 A They are.
- 17 Q During the time period that Mr. Watts
- 18 was a member of the committee overseeing EP,
- 19 specifically 1996, '97, do you have any
- 20 understanding of how the ARPR process was
- 21 conducted at EP?
- 22 A Not in '96 and '97, no, I don't.
- 23 Q And I believe you stated that you had --
- 24 withdrawn. I'm sorry. Could you please tell me
- 25 again where it was that -- what position you held 0205
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 at Shell in 1997.
- 3 A I was the Shareholder Finance Advisor in
- 4 the Downstream Business for Asia Pacific, working
- 5 in London.
- 6 Q I believe you previously stated that
- organizationally that Business was similar
- 8 structured to EP at that time; is that correct?
- 9 A I believe it was, yes.
- 10 Q Could you please tell me how the ARPR
- 11 process, if you know, was handled in the
- 12 Downstream Business in the Asia Pacific market in
- 13 which you were employed during that period.
- 14 A The Downstream Business has no
- 15 equivalent of proved reserves, although it was
- 16 entirely an EP process.
- 17 Q Do you know if Mr. Watts in 1997 was
- 18 informed of the proved reserves that had been
- 19 booked at EP?

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 125 of 200 PageID:

A No, I don't know.

- 23962
- Q Going back now to the follow-up meetings
- 22 that were conducted following the Group Strategy
- 23 Presentations, were those different than the
- 24 periodic roadshows that were conducted by Shell?
- A Not in any material aspect.

- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 Q Were the roadshows separate
- 3 presentations or separate meetings with investors?
- 4 Were they different than the follow-up meetings?
- 5 A The follow-up meetings to the Group
- 6 Strategy meeting would typically build on the
- 7 presentation that had just taken place. Roadshows
- 8 that took place at different times of the year
- 9 would either follow another presentation, such as
- 10 the Business Strategy Presentation or, for
- 11 example, one of the presentations at a Merrill
- 12 Lynch conference or a Credit Suisse conference,
- 13 and or they would just be scheduled in in a period
- 14 when we could talk to the market, and we would use
- 15 material based on whatever the last public
- 16 statement had been, which was quite often the
- 17 previous Quarterly Results Announcement, but the
- 18 meetings themselves were basically the same format
- 19 wherever we went.
- 20 Q Were there -- withdrawn. Who
- 21 represented senior management, if anyone, at those
- 22 roadshows?
- A In any given year we would try to give
- 24 all of the Managing Directors an opportunity to
- 25 talk to the market for two reasons. One, it was 0207
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 good that the market had some face-to-face time
- 3 with each of them, which is about building
- 4 credibility, but also so that each of those senior
- 5 executives came face to face with the owners of
- 6 the company and heard their concerns directly, so
- 7 we would aim for at least one day of meetings for
- 8 each of them. We would -- we aimed to do maybe
- 9 150, 200 meetings a year typically five meetings a
- 10 day, so we need 40 days. We would be given

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 126 of 200 PageID:

- 11 probably half of those days by Sir Philip and 120063
- 12 Boynton in their schedule, so they would give us
- 13 that time, so they would do maybe half of the
- 14 meetings. The Managing Directors would do some,
- 15 and occasionally we would use other senior
- 16 executives or myself from IR, depending on the
- 17 size and materiality of the investors we were
- 18 visiting.
- 19 Q Now, 150 days of meetings, was that
- 20 exclusive of the follow-up meetings that were
- 21 conducted after the Group Strategy Presentation?
- MR. SMITH: Objection to form. He
- 23 didn't say 150 days.
- 24 BY MR. MACFALL:
- Q I'm sorry. 150 meetings.

- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 A Around 40 days was our planning basis.
- 3 That would include the follow-up meetings to the
- 4 Group Strategy Presentation, which may be eight to
- 5 ten days.
- 6 Q I believe we discussed some of the
- 7 metrics that were discussed at various meetings
- 8 with analysts investors, such as ROACE and UFDC.
- 9 Do you recall -- and RRR. Do you recall if there
- 10 were others that were discussed throughout your
- 11 tenure at Investor Relations?
- 12 A High on the agenda for most of the
 - 3 period was production growth and production and
- 14 all subsidiary contributors to production, such as
- 15 decline rates and new projects. Capital
- 16 investment levels, how much do we invest, was
- 17 discussed all through the period. The potential
- 18 earnings or cash flow per barrel that could be
- 19 generated from a given project or part of the
- 20 portfolio would be discussed. The LNG --
- 21 Liquefied Natural Gas -- sales volumes and the
- 22 corresponding growth would be discussed.
- 23 Refining, uh, refining margins. Sales volumes in
- 24 the Oil Products Business. Refinery reliability.
- 25 Dividend levels. Levels of share buy-backs. 0209
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 127 of 200 PageID:

- 2 Gearing on the balance sheet and levels of 23964
- 3 operating expenditure for the individual
- 4 Businesses, usually in terms of a unit of op-ex,
- 5 operating expenditure per barrel. I think that's
- 6 the broad set. There were from time to time other
- 7 underlying indicators, but that's probably the
- 8 totality.
- 9 I didn't mention Debt Adjusted Cash
- 10 Flow.
- 11 Q With respect to Debt Adjusted Cash Flow,
- 12 could you please explain for me your understanding
- 13 of that metric.
- 14 A That metric is a measure of the cash
- 15 that can be generated by the Business before
- 16 reinvestment, adjusted for any debt in the
- 17 Business, so deducts any interest payments that
- 18 are included in the earnings of the Business. It
- 19 is used by analysts to ascertain the quality of
- 20 the current business and the amount of cash that
- 21 is likely to be available either for reinvestment
- 22 or for payout to the shareholders as dividend.
- 23 Q Is there a relationship between DACF and
- 24 Discounted Cash Flow as reported in the Group's
- 25 20-F?
- 0210
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 MR. SMITH: Objection to form.
- THE WITNESS: The simple answer is no.
- 4 BY MR. MACFALL:
- 5 Q During your tenure at Investor Relations
- 6 were there periodic meetings conducted for Shell
- 7 executives in Houston, Texas? Let me rephrase
- 8 that. Were there periodic meetings conducted for
- 9 Shell executives which were held in Houston,
- 10 Texas?
- 11 MR. SMITH: Objection to the form. You
- 12 mean IR meetings or just any meetings of any kind?
- 13 MR. MACFALL: Any meetings of any kind.
- MR. SMITH: Shell executives in Houston.
- 15 BY MR. MACFALL:
- 16 Q Were you aware of something called
- 17 "Shell Days"?
- 18 A "Shell Days"? You mean Group Days in

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 128 of 200 PageID:

19 Shell Business Week?

- 23965
- 20 Q Yes. I'm sorry. Yes. And could you
- 21 please describe what that is.
- A I'll make this easy for you.
- Q Thank you.
- A At the end of May, roughly, each year,
- 25 there is a meeting held, a series of meetings held 0211
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 called collectively "Business Week." One day in
- 3 that week is known as the Group Day, where about
- 4 350 executives meet, hear from the senior
- 5 executives, state of the nation concerns,
- 6 challenges, what keeps them awake at night at that
- 7 point in time. Most years -- in fact, all years
- 8 that I'm aware of -- another day would be taken
- 9 up, at least one day, by what are called the
- 10 Business Days, where people from the EP Business
- 11 have a meeting with the Leadership Team, and
- 12 that's around 120 people. The Downstream people
- 13 will meet with their Leadership Team, and around
- 14 those big meetings there are many other smaller
- 15 meetings that take place as well, and that's been
- 16 happening now for around ten years.
- 17 Q Were these meetings typically conducted
- 18 in Houston?
- 19 A Recently they have been conducted in
- 20 Houston.
- Q What do you mean by "recently"?
- A Since about 2000. I've only been going
- 23 to them since 2001. All the ones that I've
- 24 attended may have been in Houston. There is a
- 25 smaller more exclusive event in December, which is 0212
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 the more senior subset of people of that group
- 3 that is held in the Netherlands in December, so
- 4 I've attended all of those in December, and I've
- 5 attended in Houston in May. Prior to 2000 I am
- 6 certainly aware that some years they were held
- 7 elsewhere.
- 8 Q Mr. Henry, I'd like to backtrack for one
- 9 moment. I'm sorry. With respect to the metrics

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 129 of 200 PageID:

- 10 that you described that were discussed during 30066
- 11 tenure at IR, one I believe is Cash Flow Per
- 12 Barrel, correct? Cash Flow Per Barrel?
- 13 A That's correct.
- 14 Q Can you tell me if Cash Flow Per Barrel
- 15 is related to Discounted Cash Flow.
- MR. SMITH: Objection to form.
- 17 THE WITNESS: No, it's not.
- 18 BY MR. MACFALL:
- 19 Q Could you describe for me what Cash Flow
- 20 Per Barrel -- or your understanding of that
- 21 metric.
- 22 A The Cash Flow Per Barrel is essentially
- 23 the Debt Adjusted Cash Flow per barrel of
- 24 production, sometimes adjusted for working capital
- 25 movements, but it depends who's, who's doing the 0213
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 analysis.
- 3 Q Thank you.
- 4 In addition to the roadshows and the
- 5 formal presentations that you have previously
- 6 described, did Shell ever conduct field trips for
- 7 analysts and investors?
- 8 A Yes, we did.
- 9 Q Do you recall if any of those field
- 10 trips occurred in Houston and Canada?
- 11 A Yes. One did.
- 12 Q Do you recall approximately when that
- 13 was?
- 14 A October 2002.
- 15 Q Did you participate in that field trip?
- 16 A I did.
- 17 Q Could you describe for me briefly your
- 18 participation or your role with regard to that
- 19 field trip.
- A My main role was deciding to hold the
- 21 field trip in the first place as part of the
- 22 communication strategy. We had not held a field
- 23 trip since I think 1999, and field trips were
- 24 typically a good way to improve relationships with
- 25 investors and analysts and give them an
- 0214

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 130 of 200 PageID:

- SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006 23967
- 2 opportunity to see some of the hardware.

- We had had a mini field trip in Malaysia
- 4 in 2001, early 2001, that I was involved in, but
- 5 that was only a relatively small event, so 2002
- 6 was an opportunity to take analysts to the Oil
- 7 Sands activity in Canada, which was a major
- 8 strategic place for Shell. The assets were nearly
- 9 complete, expected to start up in early 2003, and
- 10 it was particularly for the European analysts who
- 11 knew little or nothing about the Oil Sands
- 12 activity in Canada, and a great opportunity to let
- 13 them see what the business was about, where a lot
- 14 of our money was being invested. So the prime
 - 5 reason for deciding on the trip was Oil Sands and
- 16 its major contribution to strategy in the future.
- Having decided that it would be a good
- 18 idea to take the analysts to Canada -- which, by
- 19 the way, was second choice to Nigeria, but we had
- 20 an issue around security. Having decided to take
- 21 them to Canada, we felt North America -- this was
- 22 the year, a year or so after we had done the
- 23 Chevron/Texaco deal and increased our Downstream
- 24 presence, and about six, seven months after we had
- 25 done the Pennzoil/Lubricants acquisition in the 0215
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 Downstream North America, it was clear from our
- 3 reported performance that the Downstream
- 4 performance in North America was an
- 5 underperforming business for Shell relative to
- 6 competitors, so we felt it would be worthwhile
- 7 doubling up the locations and going to Houston to
- 8 let the Downstream guys talk about the Downstream
- 9 Business.
- They had set themselves a target of a
- 11 billion dollars of earnings after the U.S.
- 12 Downstream Business, and there was skepticism
- 13 about whether that could be delivered, and we felt
- 14 taking the analysts down to Houston and giving
- 15 them a chance to talk to the senior executives in
- 16 the Downstream Business would be a good way of
- 17 helping to address some of that concern.

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 131 of 200 PageID:

- That was the strategy that was agreed o23968
- 19 developed by me, agreed with Sir Philip and Judy,
- 20 and then having got that agreement, we passed over
- 21 the party-planning to David Sexton, given that he
- 22 was North America-based, and David put together
- 23 the logistics and the program, and we worked as an
- 24 IR team across the different Businesses that would
- 25 actually present.

0216

- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 Having gotten the analysts in Houston,
- 3 we did also feel it was worth sharing the state of
- 4 the U.S. EP Business as well, so we actually did a
- 5 presentation on the EP and technology during the
- 6 visit. So my role was driver strategy overall,
- 7 get the messages, the consistent messages right,
- 8 make sure we invited the right people, and
- 9 effectively the host of the whole field trip.
- 10 Q Do you recall approximately how many
- 11 analysts and investors attended that field trip?
- 12 A It varied during the -- it went up to 60
- 13 in total around Houston, but they didn't all get
- 14 to Canada. It was around 45 went to Canada, I
- 15 believe.
- 16 Q Now, you reference the attendance of
- 17 European analysts at this field trip. Do you
- 18 recall approximately how many analysts from Europe
- 19 attended this field trip?
- 20 A Probably around 35. 35, 40.
- 21 Q Generally do you recall if all of the
- 22 European analysts attended both in Houston and in
- 23 Canada?
- A Most of the Europeans did.
- Q Did you have a role in deciding who to

- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 invite to attend the field trip?
- 3 A Yes, I did.
- 4 Q How is it that you decided who to
- 5 invite?
- 6 A It was a combination of the sell side
- 7 equity analysts and the buy side investors. We
- 8 invited all of the major sell side analysts who

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 132 of 200 PageID:

- 9 were prime coverage on Shell for any material 28969
- 10 material investment bank or research house. That
- 11 would have been the majority, but we also tried to
- 12 limit it to one person per brokerage rather than
- 13 two or three.
- We also wanted to invite around 30 of
- 15 the representatives from up to 30 of the major
- 16 investors, um, split between Europe and the U.S.,
- 17 and it was an iterative process, having been
- 18 through the top 30 investors and which sell side
- 19 analysts would come to the final invitation, but
- 20 we wanted a good balance between the three markets
- 21 that we work in and between sell side and buy
- 22 side.
- Q Were formal presentations made to the
- 24 analysts and investors during this field trip?
- A Yes, they were.
- 0218
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 Q Who were those presentations made by?
- 3 A I have to stretch my memory here, but
- 4 the first day was Downstream, so Paul Skinner, the
- 5 Managing Director who was responsible for Oil
- 6 Products, would have kicked off. I believe
- 7 Russell Kaplan presented on retail. I believe
- 8 David Parrot (phonetic) presented on Lubricants.
- 9 And we visited Deer Park Refinery where Tim Hake,
- 10 the refinery manager, talked about the Refining
- 11 Business.
- On the second day I believe we had two
- 13 presentations from the EP sector, Raoul Restucci,
- 14 who ran the U.S. EP Business, and John Darley, who
- 15 ran the Global Technology Division within EP. And
- 16 then we flew to Canada where, before we visited
- 17 the mine site, we had presentations from the Chief
- 18 Executive in Canada, Clive Mayner (phonetic). No,
- 19 it wasn't Clive Mayner. I think it was Tim
- 20 Faithful. And from the head of the Oil Sands
- 21 Project, Neal Camata. So probably six, seven,
- 22 eight, eight presentations.
- Q How long did the investors and analysts
- 24 stay in Houston during that field trip?
- A Before we started the field trip it was

0219

- SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 a day and a half in Houston.
- 3 Q And how long in Canada?
- 4 A A day and a half.
- 5 Q Do you recall, separate and apart from
- 6 any formal presentations, having discussions with
- 7 any analysts concerning Shell's operations during
- 8 the course of that field trip?
- 9 A On any subject?
- 10 Q Yes.
- 11 A Many. That was the purpose for me.
- 12 Q Did Mr. Watts attend that field trip?
- 13 A No, he did not.
- 14 Q Did Ms. Boynton?
- 15 A I don't remember. She may have been
- 16 present at a lunch or a dinner, but she did not
- 17 take formal part in that presentation.
- 18 Q Did Mr. van der Vijver attend that field
- 19 trip?
- 20 A I believe he did attend one of the
- 21 lunches or the dinners.
- Q Do you recall if Mr. van der Vijver
- 23 participated in a formal presentation?
- A I don't believe he did, not in the
- 25 formal presentation.
- 0220
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 Q Do you recall him making any informal
- 3 presentations?
- 4 A No, I don't.
- 5 Q During the course of your various
- 6 conversations with analysts during that field
- 7 trip, do you recall discussing Shell's Reserves
- 8 Replacement Ratio?
- 9 A I don't recall specifically, but given
- 10 the timing, it's quite possible that that subject
- 11 was discussed.
- 12 Q I take it from your answer you don't
- 13 recall specifically what was said.
- 14 A There were 60 odd of my customers there.
- 15 It was my aim to do all of them and communicate
- 16 with all of them in a three-day period. I really

file:///Cl/Documents%20and%20Settings/daustin/Desktop/Deposition%20Transcripts/101606sh.txt Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 134 of 200 PageID: 17 don't remember who said what. 23971 18 Q During that time period do you recall if 19 Shell had a communication plan or strategy in place specifically with regard to the Reserves Replacement Ratio issue? 21 22 MR. SMITH: Objection to form and 23 foundation. 24 THE WITNESS: The permanent strategy was 25 at a much higher level than any given indicator. 0221 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006 Within the plan and the strategy there would be either a Position Statement or a Q&A on any 4 particular issue, and reserves and Reserves 5 Replacement Ratio was one of the issues that 6 formed part of the overall pack. The overall strategy and plan was at a higher level than any 7 8 one indicator. 9 BY MR. MACFALL: Q Do you recall if there was a Position 10 Statement with respect to Shell's Reserves 11 Replacement Ratio? 12 Yes, there would have been. 14 Q Okay. Do you recall what that Position Statement was? 15 16 MR. SMITH: You're talking about

- 13
- October 2002 time frame? 17
- 18 BY MR. MACFALL:
- 19 Q I am.
- 20 A I believe it would be along the lines of
- 21 we replace, we aim to replace every barrel that we
- produce, or words to that effect, over time. 22
- 23 Q That Position Statement, was that
- something that was communicated to senior
- 25 executives at Shell in terms of what they should 0222
- SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006 1
- say to analysts or investors concerning the
- 3 Reserves Replacement Ratio?
- MR. SMITH: Same time frame? 4
- BY MR. MACFALL:
- 6 Q During the same time frame. I'm sorry.
- Thank you.

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 135 of 200 PageID:

- 8 A Yes, it was.
 - Yes, it was. 239
- 9 Q As distinct from the Reserves
- 10 Replacement Ratio, do you recall if the issue of
- 11 proved reserves came up during the course of any
- 12 of your conversations with analysts or investors
- 13 during that field trip?
- 14 A Do you mean proved reserves as already
- 15 reported rather than the dynamic ratio of what you
- 16 add in a given period?
- 17 Q I meant at all, but we can break it down
- 18 that way. First as reported, do you recall if
- 19 that was discussed?
- A I don't recall, but it's unlikely.
- 21 Q Do you recall if proved reserves was
- 22 discussed on a forward-looking basis?
- A Likely it would have been in particular,
- 24 because the Oil Sands project we took them to
- 25 visit, despite spending lots of money and 0223
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 producing lots of oil, did not actually enable us
- 3 to book any proved reserves at all, because they
- 4 did not qualify under SEC guidelines. So one of
- 5 our objectives was to take them to a major
- 6 investment that would produce oil, but not
- 7 actually add any reserves at all.
- 8 Q Separate and apart from that project, do
- 9 you recall if proved reserves was discussed with
- 10 any of the analysts or investors on a
- 11 forward-looking base?
- 12 A Not specifically, but it's almost
- 13 certain that it was discussed then that the
- 14 general statement -- if you understand Business,
- 15 that you need to replace every barrel that you
- 16 produce would have been discussed. It's also
- 17 likely that the exploration activity in the Gulf
- 18 of Mexico would have been discussed as a possible
- 19 source of future reserve additions.
- 20 Q Do you recall if Nigeria was discussed
- 21 in connection with potential proved reserves for
- 22 Shell during that field trip?
- A During that field trip? I don't recall,
- 24 and it's relatively unlikely that it was

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 136 of 200 PageID:

25 discussed.

- 0224
- SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006 1
- 2 Do you recall having conversations with
- analysts or investors at any time concerning the
- booking of proved reserves at Nigeria or in
- 5 Nigeria?
- 6 A Not before Project Rockford.
- Prior to or excluding Project Rockford, 7
- were you aware that there was a moratorium on the
- booking of proved reserves in Nigeria?
- For on-shore Nigeria, not the off-shore 10
- project. 11
- 12 Q Correct.
- 13 A I can't remember when I became aware of
- 14 that, honestly.
- Q Do you recall if it was prior to Project 15
- 16 Rockford or during Project Rockford that you first
- became aware of that?
- A I was certainly aware during Project 18
- 19 Rockford. I honestly don't remember being aware
- 20 of that prior to Project Rockford itself. The
- issues that did discuss were about production and
- production growth from Nigeria and our capability
- to deliver that production growth. 23
- Q Was there a concern about Shell's 24
- 25 ability to deliver production growth in connection 0225
- 1
- SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- with Nigeria?
- A Amongst Investor Relations, yes, because 3
- we were aware of the growth projections for
- 5 Nigeria. In fact, we had shown them to the
- 6 outside world and they were in the public domain,
- and what growth do you expect from Nigeria, and it
- 8 was quite significant. It was a significant part
- 9 of our future growth profile, and our concern was
- 10 that will we actually deliver it, because it's
- such a significant piece. 11
- Q During your tenure at IR do you recall 12
- if Nigeria was delivering the level of production
- as established in those targets that were shared
- with the outside world?

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 137 of 200 PageID:

- A By and large, no, it wasn't; hence the 23974
- 17 concern from IR as to whether it would continue to
- 18 do so in future.
- 19 Q Did investors or analysts express any
- 20 concern with regard to that issue?
- A Production growth generally, yes. It
- 22 wasn't always apparent to them that Nigeria was a
- 23 major cause of a shortfall, although we did, at
- 24 least in the 20-F report, by country production,
- 25 so from time to time we did get questions about 0226
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 Nigeria specifically, production-related
- 3 questions.
- 4 Q Did there come a time during your tenure
- 5 at IR that Shell engaged in the acquisition of an
- 6 entity known as Enterprise?
- 7 A Yes.
- 8 Q Do you recall approximately when that --
- 9 well, do you recall when that occurred?
- 10 A The actual deal was announced publicly
- 11 in 2002. We had been working on and off on that
- 12 acquisition and other possibles for about three to
- 13 four months, I personally being involved.
- 14 Q Could you please describe for me your
- 15 role.
- 16 A My role was primarily to give advice on
- 17 market positioning and acceptance of the deal that
- 18 we might do, depending on the price and what deal
- 19 we were able to achieve, whether that would be
- 20 perceived as a good deal or a bad deal by the
- 21 market, what it would do for our competitive
- 22 positioning, and as we approached the deal, the
- 23 conclusion of the deal, to develop a communication
- 24 program around the deal to our own shareholders.
- 25 Q I believe you stated that Enterprise was 0227
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 one of several acquisition candidates; is that
- 3 correct?
- 4 A That is correct.
- 5 Q Who were the other acquisition
- 6 candidates?

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 138 of 200 PageID:

- A Might I have to say? Do I need to say?23975
- 8 MR. FERRARA: Sorry. Are these things
- 9 that have been publicly announced previously by
- 10 Shell?
- 11 THE WITNESS: Not publicly by Shell.
- MR. FERRARA: Then I'm not sure that
- 13 that's an appropriate thing to get into in this
- 14 record. I'm not sure what the relevance is to
- 15 this.
- MR. MACFALL: I'm not sure that that's
- 17 an appropriate reason to withhold the information.
- 18 The deposition is under seal, but to accommodate
- 19 Mr. Ferrara, I won't pursue it.
- 20 BY MR. MACFALL:
- 21 Q With regard to the Enterprise
- 22 acquisition, did you monitor market reaction to
- 23 that transaction?
- A Yes, we did.
- Q Were you able to characterize the
- 0228
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 market's reaction to that acquisition as favorable
- 3 or unfavorable?
- 4 A My characterization to people inside the
- 5 company at the time was that it was in general
- 6 unfavorable. Over time it became more favorable.
- 7 Q Was the market's reaction consistent
- 8 with -- withdrawn. Had you provided senior
- 9 management at Shell with advice with regard to the
- 10 potential market reaction concerning an
- 11 acquisition of Enterprise?
- 12 A Yes.
- 13 MR. SMITH: Objection to form.
- 14 BY MR. MACFALL:
- 15 Q Was the actual market reaction,
- 16 subsequent to that acquisition, consistent with
- 17 the advice that you had given to senior
- 18 management?
- 19 MR. SMITH: Objection to form.
- THE WITNESS: By and large, yes. It was
- 21 consistent with the advice we had given, yes.
- 22 BY MR. MACFALL:
- Q Were you told why Shell acquired

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 139 of 200 PageID:

24 Enterprise?

A Yes.

- 23976
- 25 0229
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 Q What were you told?
- 3 A I was told several reasons. One, it was
- pure and simply a good price for an asset in an
- area of activity that we knew well with good
- 6 synergy. It was mainly a North Sea operation
- where we are already a well-established player,
- 8 and it helped to prolong the life of our North Sea
- infrastructure and the North Sea capabilities that
- 10 we had. And we bought it at a price at a time the
- oil price was \$18 to \$20. I agonized over what
- price we should be valuing it at. As it turns
- out, the price has averaged about \$45 to \$50 since
- 14 then, so that's why the market sees it as a better
- deal over time, but it was explained as being a
- good asset to have with exposure to high oil
- prices relative to our average portfolio, because
- there was some assets in our portfolio that don't
- have exposure to high oil prices, so Enterprise
- helped address that balance. It also helped 20
- 21 address production growth and added reserves.
- 22 Do you recall approximately how much in 23 reserves it added to Shell?
- 24 Enterprise themselves were booking over
- 25 a billion barrels of proved reserves. When we 0230
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- took it on and brought it through our reserves
- guidelines, it was around 700 million. So they
- had been more aggressively booking reserves than
- 5 Shell did.
- 6 Did Mr. Watts ever comment to you that
- the acquisition of Enterprise served as a gap
- 8 filler with respect to Shell's proved reserves?
- 9 MR. MORSE: Objection to form.
- THE WITNESS: We had discussions, and I 10
- don't recall whether it would be Mr. Watts or
- 12 Walter or others, about strategically Shell's
- 13 portfolio having a lot of assets three, four, five
- years away from production and the Enterprise

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 140 of 200 PageID:

- 15 filled the gap in that in terms of production and 3977
- 16 reserves, yes, but I don't recall if it was Sir
- 17 Philip or others, but it was certainly part of the
- 18 discussion.
- 19 BY MR. MACFALL:
- 20 Q Do you recall if the market perceived --
- 21 withdrawn. Did you receive feedback from the
- 22 market indicating that analysts believed that
- 23 Enterprise was acquired in order to improve
- 24 Shell's proved reserves position?
- MR. SMITH: Objection to form.
- 0231
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- THE WITNESS: We had a lot of feedback
- 3 from the market, some of it good, some of it not
- 4 so good. One of the things that would have been
- 5 said is this was done to help address a low Proved
- 6 Reserve Replacement Ratio, because by then we --
- 7 this was two months after we had given figures for
- 8 2001, and this was -- that was the year I think we
- 9 already discussed with a relatively low
- 10 replacement ratio. So analysts would observe,
- 11 it's added production, helps growth, it's added
- 12 reserves, helped replacement ratio, and questions
- 13 were mainly about had Shell paid too much for
- 14 something that had, in their view, limited
- 15 long-term strategic growth opportunities. That
- 16 was their main concern.
- 17 BY MR. MACFALL:
- 18 Q Do you recall if there was any
- 19 discussion with analysts or investors concerning
- 20 the UFDC for Enterprise versus the UFDC for Shell?
- A No, I don't recall explicitly.
- MR. MACFALL: Why don't we go off the
- 23 record for a minute, please.
- 24 THE VIDEOGRAPHER: We are going off the
- 25 record. The time is 5:53 p.m.
- 0232
- 1 SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
- 2 (Whereupon, a short recess was taken.)
- THE VIDEOGRAPHER: We are back on the
- 4 record. The time is 5:57 p.m.
- 5 MR. MACFALL: I will note for the record

file:///Cl/Documents%20and%20Settings/daustin/Desktop/Deposition%20Transcripts/101606sh.txt

	le:///Cl/Documents%20and%20Settings/daustin/Desktop/Deposition%20Transcripts/101606sh.txt Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 143 of 200 PageID 23980
14 15	
16	
17	
18	
19	
20	
21	
22	·
23	
24	· · · · · · · · · · · · · _ · _ ·
25	(DATE) (SIGNATURE)
02	
1	SIMON HENRY, October 16th, 2006
2	
3	CEDITIFICATE OF CHORESTAND DEPONTED NOTABLY DUDY IC
4	CERTIFICATE OF SHORTHAND REPORTER NOTARY PUBLIC
5	I, Laurie Bangart-Smith, Registered
6	Professional Reporter, the officer before whom the
6	foregoing deposition was taken, do hereby certify that the foregoing transcript is a true and
7	correct record of the testimony given; that said
,	testimony was taken by me stenographically and
8	thereafter reduced to typewriting under my
Ü	supervision; and that I am neither counsel for,
9	related to, nor employed by any of the parties to
	this case and have no interest, financial or
10	otherwise, in its outcome.
11	IN WITNESS WHEREOF, I have hereunto set
	my hand and affixed my notarial seal this 17th
12	day of October, 2006.
13	
14	
15	
16	
17	
18	
19	
20	
21	
2223	
23 24	

25

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 144 of 200 PageID: 23981

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 145 of 200 PageID: 23982

	23982	
		Page 237
1	IN THE UNITED STATES DISTRICT COURT	
2	DISTRICT OF NEW JERSEY	
3	CIV. NO. 04-3749 (JAP)	
4	(Consolidated Cases)	
5	Hon. Joel A. Pisano	
6		
7	X	
8	IN RE ROYAL DUTCH/SHELL :	
9	TRANSPORT SECURITIES :	
10	LITIGATION :	
11	X	
12		
13	Videotaped Deposition of	
14	SIMON HENRY	
15	Volume II	
16	Washington, D.C.	
17	Tuesday, October 17, 2006	
18	9:45 a.m.	
19		
20		
21		
22	Job No.: 22-84926	
23	Pages 237 - 392	
24	Reported by: Ellen L. Ford, RPR	
25		

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 146 of 200 PageID: 23983

	23983
	Page 238
1	Videodeposition Deposition of SIMON HENRY, held at the
2	offices of:
3	
4	
5	LeBoeuf, Lamb, Greene & Macrae, LLP
6	1875 Connecticut Avenue, Northwest
7	Suite 1200
8	Washington, D.C. 20009
9	
10	
11	
12	Pursuant to agreement, before Ellen L. Ford,
13	Registered Professional Reporter and Notary Public in
14	and for the District of Columbia.
15	
16	
17	
18	
19	
20	
21	
22	
23	
24	
25	

			Page 239
1		APPEARANCES	
2	ON BEHALF	OF PLAINTIFFS IN THE CLASS:	
3		TIMOTHY J. MacFALL, ESQUIRE	
4		JEFFREY M. HABER, ESQUIRE	
5		CHRISTINE I. LAURENT, ESQUIRE	
6		CHRISTINE MARTINEZ, Legal Assistant	
7		BERNSTEIN LIEBHARD & LIFSHITZ, LLP	
8		10 East 40th Street	
9		New York, New York 10016	
10		(212) 779-1414	
11			
12	ON BEHALF	OF OPT OUT PLAINTIFFS:	
13		CHRISTINE MACKINTOSH	
14		GRANT & EISENHOFER	
15		1201 NORTH MARKET STREET	
16		WILMINGTON, DELAWARE 19801	
17		(301)	
18			
19	ON BEHALF	OF ROYAL DUTCH/SHELL AND THE WITNESS:	
20		RALPH C. FERRARA, ESQUIRE	
21		LEBOEUF, LAMB, GREENE & MACRAE, LLP	
22		1875 Connecticut Avenue, Northwest	
23		Suite 1200	
24		Washington, D.C. 20009	
25		(202) 986-8000	

	7.5700	
		Page 240
1	APPEARANCES (continued)	
2	ON BEHALF OF ROYAL DUTCH/SHELL AND THE WITNESS:	
3	CHARLES F. PLATT, ESQUIRE	
4	SENIOR LEGAL COUNSEL	
5	SHELL OIL COMPANY, Litigation Department	
6	910 Louisiana, OSP 4836	
7	Houston, Texas 77001	
8	(713) 241-5195	
9		
10	ON BEHALF OF PRICEWATERHOUSECOOPERS, LLD:	
11	SAVVAS A. FOUKAS, ESQUIRE	
12	HUGHES, HUBBARD & REED, LLP	
13	One Battery Park Plaza	
14	New York, New York 10004-1482	
15	(212)837-6086	
16		
17	ALSO ON BEHALF OF SHELL AND THE WITNESS:	
18	COLBY A. SMITH, ESQUIRE	
19	DAVID C. WARE, ESQUIRE	
20	DEBEVOISE & PLIMPTON, LLP	
21	555 13th Street, Northwest	
22	Washington, D.C. 20004	
23	(202) 383-8000	
24		
25		

	23900	
		Page 241
1	APPEARANCES (continued)	
2	ON BEHALF OF KPMG ACCOUNTANTS N.V.:	
3	TRACEY A. TISKA, ESQUIRE	
4	HOGAN & HARTSON, LLP	
5	875 Third Avenue	
6	New York, New York 10022	
7	(212) 918-3000	
8		
9	ON BEHALF OF JUDITH BOYNTON:	
10	REBECCA E. WICKHEM, ESQUIRE	
11	FOLEY & LARDNER, LLP	
12	777 East Wisconsin Avenue	
13	Milwaukee, Wisconsin 53202-5306	
14	(414) 297-5681	
15		
16	ON BEHALF OF SIR PHILIP WATTS:	
17	ADRIAEN M. MORSE, JR., ESQUIRE	
18	JOSEPH I. GOLDSTEIN, ESQUIRE	
19	MAYER, BROWN, ROWE & MAW, LLP	
20	1909 K Street, Northwest	
21	Washington, D.C. 20006-1101	
22	(202) 263-3387	
23		
24	ALSO PRESENT: CALI DAY, Videographer	
25		

Case 3:04-cv-00374-JAP-JJH Document 350-1 Filed 10/10/07 Page 150 of 200 PageID:

	<u>23987</u>	
		Page 242
1	CONTENTS	
2	EXAMINATION OF SIMON HENRY	PAGE
3	By Mr. MacFall	245 - 388
4		
5	EXHIBITS	
6	(Exhibits attached to transcript.)	
7	HENRY DEPOSITION EXHIBITS	PAGE
8	No. 1 - e-mail string	248
9	No. 2 - e-mail string	251
10	No. 3 - e-mail string	263
11	No. 4 - Strategy Presentation	276
12	No. 5 - e-mail string	310
13	No. 6 - briefing pack	317
14	No. 7 - e-mail string	341
15	No. 8 - record of meetings	348
16	No. 9 - e-mail string	355
17	No. 10 - Merrill Lynch report	358
18	No. 11 - Merrill Lynch report	360
19	No. 12 - First Boston report	363
20	No. 13 - record of meetings	368
21	No. 14 - e-mail string	372
22	No. 15 - summary of group investors' strategy	У
23	and plan	379
24		
25		

	Page 243
1	PROCEEDINGS
2	VIDEOGRAPHER: Here begins Tape No. 1,
3	Volume II in the deposition of Simon Henry in the
4	matter of Royal Dutch Shell Transport Securities
5	Litigation in the United States District Court,
6	District of New Jersey. Case Number 04-374.
7	Today's date is October 17, 2006. The
8	time is 9:52 a.m. The Video Operator today is Cali
9	Day.
10	This deposition is taking place at 1875
11	Connecticut Avenue, Northwest, Washington, D.C.,
12	20009.
13	Would Counsel please identified
14	themselves and state whom they represent?
15	MR. MacFALL: Timothy MacFall,
16	Bernstein, Liebhard & Lifshitz for Plaintiffs and the
17	Class.
18	MS. LAURENT: Christine Laurent,
19	Bernstein, Liebhard & Lifshitz on behalf of the
20	Plaintiffs and the Class.
21	MR. HABER: Jeffrey Haber, Bernstein,
22	Liebhard & Lifshitz on behalf of the Lead Plaintiff,
23	Peter M. Wood and the Class.
24	MR. WARE: David Ware, DeBevoise &
25	Plimpton on behalf of the Corporate Defendants, Royal

Page 244 Dutch Petroleum Company and Shell Transport and 1 2 Trading Company. 3 MR. SMITH: Colby Smith, DeBevoise & 4 Plimpton on behalf of the two Corporate Defendants and also for the witness. 5 MR. PLATT: Charles Platt from Shell 6 7 International on behalf of the two Shell Corporate 8 Defendants. 9 MS. TISKA: Tracy Tiska from Hogan & 10 Hartson for Defendant KPMG Accountants N.V. 11 MR. FOUKAS: Savvas Foukas, Hughes 12 Hubbard & Reed for Pricewaterhousecoopers, LLP. 13 MR. MORSE: Adriaen Morse, Mayer, 14 Brown, Rowe -- Mayer, Brown, Rowe & Maw, LLP for Sir 15 Philip Watts. 16 MS. WICKHEM: Rebecca Wickhem, Foley & Lardner for Judith Boynton. 17 18 Ralph Ferrara, LeBoeuf, MR. FERRARA: 19 Lamb for two Corporate Defendants, Shell Transport and 20 Royal Dutch Shell, and for Simon Henry who is our 2.1 witness here today. 22 VIDEOGRAPHER: The Court Reporter today 23 is Ellen Ford of Legalink New York. Would the 24 Reporter please swear in the witness. 25 MR. MacFALL: Excuse me. Before we go

Page 245 on the record, one Counsel has just joined us and I 1 2 would like her to note her appearance for the record. 3 MS. MACKINTOSH: Christine Mackintosh 4 from Grant & Eisenhofer for the Opt Out Plaintiffs. BY MR. MacFALL: 5 6 Good morning, Mr. Henry. 0 7 Good morning. Α 8 Mr. Henry, I just want to follow up on some 9 of the issues we discussed yesterday and hopefully 10 move on to some new areas. 11 One of the things we were discussing yesterday 12 were the various metrics considered by the market with respect to Royal Dutch/Shell. One of those that we 13 14 discussed was ROACE, return on average capital 15 employed. 16 I believe you indicated that there was a 17 relationship between ROACE and proved reserves, 18 correct? MR. SMITH: Objection to form. 19 2.0 What I indicated was that proved reserves 2.1 impact depreciation, depletion, amortization which in 22 turn is one of the parameters that is used to 2.3 calculate ROACE. 24 Okay. Do you have an understanding as to 25 the effect on ROACE of an increase in proved reserves,

Page 246 all other things being equal? 1 All other things being equal, an increase in 2 Α 3 proved reserves would lower the depreciation rate and 4 have -- and increase ROACE. The impact is fairly minimal though at the end of the calculation given 5 6 that there are much bigger numbers in play. In terms of market -- withdrawn. 8 Was a higher ROACE a positive factor for the 9 company in terms of the market? 10 MR. SMITH: Objection to form and 11 foundation. 12 Higher ROACE that was materially higher 13 would be a positive impact. The impact of a change in 14 proved reserves would, in my opinion, never be 15 material enough to make any difference. 16 With respect to unit finding and development 17 costs, I believe you also indicated that there was an 18 impact on that metric based on proved reserve levels; is that correct? 19 2.0 Α Yes. 2.1 Would an increase in proved reserves, all 0 22 other things being equal, cause a decrease in unit 23 finding and development costs? 24 All other things being equal, yes, it would. Α 25 Was a lower unit finding and development Q

Page 247 cost viewed as a positive or favorable -- I'm sorry --1 2 a positive or negative fact by the market? 3 MR. SMITH: Objection to form and 4 foundation. It was one of many factors considered by the 5 6 market and by some analysts may be considered a 7 positive factor. By many others it was not 8 necessarily a key element in the way they looked at 9 the company. 10 Q When you say "was viewed as a positive 11 factor by some analysts", are you referring to a low 12 UFDC? 13 Α A lower UFDC. 14 Was UFDC one of the metrics that you 0 15 discussed with the market? 16 Yes, it was. Α 17 Okay. Did you discuss that metric with the 18 market because you believe that it was deemed 19 significant or material by certain analysts? 2.0 MR. SMITH: Objection to form. 2.1 I discussed it with the market because it 22 was one of the parameters that they would choose to 2.3 discuss with us. And I was aware that in the way that 24 analysts model their company, that was one of the 25 factors that some of them would use.

Page 248 1 (Henry Exhibit No. 1 - e-mail string - marked for 2 identification.) 3 BY MR. MacFALL: Mr. Henry, I've just handed you an exhibit 4 that has been marked as Henry Exhibit 1 for 5 6 identification. I would ask you to take a look at 7 that document, sir, and tell me if you recognize it. 8 I vaguely recall the correspondence. 9 For the record, the document that I've just 10 handed you is an e-mail dated August 7, 2001 from you to Graham G.S. Talbot which was CCed to various 11 12 individuals. The subject of the e-mail is, "Revised 13 IR Story Line." 14 Could you identify Mr. Talbot for me, sir? 15 Mr. Talbot worked in the Finance Department Α 16 in the expiration and production business at the time 17 in the Central Unit that was responsible for 18 performance reporting, planning and appraisal, and had been identified as a focal point to work with in 19 20 between the second quarter quarterly results announcement in 2001, which I think was about five 2.1 days before this, and presentation that we were 22 23 planning to the market about the EP business in 24 September, 2001. With regard to the subject, "Revised IR 25 Q

Page 249 1 Story Line, " could you please explain for me what an 2 IR story -- or what you meant by "IR story line"? 3 MR. SMITH: Objection to the form. 4 We had just had the presentation in the Α second quarter where Mr. Philip Watts had talked about 5 6 previous production growth targets as being a 7 challenge to meet. We were in the early stages of 8 business plan for that year at the time, which is why 9 we had made that statement previously. 10 And what we were doing at this time was aiming to develop a better understanding of the future business 11 12 projections for the company, and how that projection 13 of the performance of the company could be 14 communicated to the market. 15 The phrase story line is -- encompasses the whole 16 messages about that -- that process that we would 17 ultimately wish to talk to the market about. So it's 18 having a coherent set of messages to the market about 19 the future performance of the company. 2.0 Okay. I would like now to direct your 2.1 attention specifically to the last paragraph that 22 appears on the first page of that document that begins 23 with the words, "the link between." Do you have that, 24 sir? 25 Α Yes, I do.

Page 250

1 Q That paragraph reads, "The link between capital investment and production growth needs to be 2 3 explicit and linked to our own historical performance and the competitor group (Exxon, BP, TFE). 4 definitely a belief among some analysts that we are 5 6 projecting more bbls per dollar, and they would like to know how we do this. UFDC and other relevant 7 8 indicators may be required to demonstrate this effect 9 actually works in practice." 10 With regard to the last sentence of that 11 paragraph, could you please explain for me what it was 12 that you were attempting to convey to Mr. Talbot? 13 Α One important indicator for the market is 14 capital efficiency and what the return on every dollar 15 invested might prove to be. 16 Individual analysts use different measures. 17 go clearly, some are looking at ultimate return on 18 capital employed, some look at the margin per barrel, 19 some will look at UFDC, some will look at -- they 20 don't really have a name for it -- but current capital 2.1 per current barrel of current production. But either way, they're looking to assess what is 22 23 the return on today's investment. UFDC is one of the 24 indicators as mentioned here. 25 What I was looking for in this particular

Page 251 paragraph was for future projects, could we in IR 1 2 understand what future development costs or the other 3 relevant indicators might look like in a way that we 4 could communicate to the market to help address the concern that I talk about that some analysts think 5 that the capital investment levels were too low for 6 7 the levels of future production. 8 Thank you. 9 (Henry Exhibit No. 2 - e-mail string - marked for identification.) 10 BY MR. MacFALL: 11 12 Mr. Henry, I'm now handing a document that Q 13 has been marked as Henry Exhibit 2 for identification. Again, sir, I would ask you to take a look at that and 14 15 tell me if you recognize it. 16 Α Okay. Yes. 17 You recognize this document? 0 18 I do recognize that. Α 19 Okay. For the record, the document is an 20 e-mail string, the most recent of which is from 2.1 Malcolm Brinded dated September 22nd, 2001 to Philip 22 Watts and Judy Blackmon. The subject is, "Oil Price Note for CMD." 2.3 24 Could you identify Mr. Brinded for me, sir? 25 Mr. Brinded at the time was Director of Α

Page 252

- 1 Group Planning, Strategy and External Affairs.
- 2 O I would note for the record that was in
- 3 Mr. Brinded's e-mail. He reproduces an e-mail from
- 4 you dated Thursday, September 27, 2001 to David Frowd
- 5 on which he was CCed along with several other
- 6 individuals.
- 7 Could you identify Mr. Frowd for me, please?
- 8 A Mr. Frowd worked in Mr. Brinded's unit. And
- 9 if I remember correctly was responsible for some of
- 10 the economics, the longer term thinking about oil
- 11 price environment and the industry environment.
- MR. FERRARA: Tim, if we're going to
- 13 get into this e-mail, may I at least suggest that if
- 14 you're going to direct him to a paragraph in here, you
- identify the paragraph, perhaps give him the first
- 16 couple of words of the sentence you want him to focus
- on, then ask him your questions rather than read the
- 18 whole paragraph into the record? It may save us a bit
- 19 of time.
- MR. MacFALL: That's fine.
- 21 Q Mr. Henry, I would like to direct your
- 22 attention to the second page of the document, the
- 23 third bullet point down, the third hyphen down there
- is a sentence beginning with the words, "the ROACE
- 25 ranges." Do you see that, sir?

Page 253 1 Α I do. 2 If you could read that and the following Q 3 bullet point to yourself and then let me know when vou're finished. 4 5 Α Okay. I read it. 6 Okay. You indicate in the second paragraph, 7 which I believe is related to the first, that, "A 8 change in reserves in PSCs affects by increase" --9 well, withdrawn. 10 You discuss reserve changes impacting depletion charges in certain countries. Do you see that, sir? 11 12 Yes, I do. Α 13 First of all, could you please explain for 14 me what a PSC is? 15 A PSC is a production sharing contract where 16 the oil company has the right to recover costs and a 17 certain amount of profit oil from production with the 18 remainder of the production typically reverting to the Government. Because the oil company has the right to 19 20 recover a certain amount of money rather than a 2.1 certain amount of barrels associated with cost, as the 22 oil price changes, the oil company's share of barrels 23 that they're entitled to changes. 24 If the oil price goes up, the number of barrels 25 the oil company is entitled to goes down and vice

Page 254 1 versa. 2 With respect to the reference in that 3 sentence to the "change for reserves in PSCs", what 4 were you referencing there? 5 The whole correspondence is about a proposal 6 from David Frowd's group about, for our planning purposes, what oil price should we be building our 7 8 plans and some of our decision-making around. 9 David is recommending an increase from \$16 a barrel to \$18 a barrel. 10 11 My concern at the time was that, understanding 12 how the mechanism of a production sharing contract 13 worked, as I just explained, was that that increase in 14 future oil prices could lead to a reduction of 15 reserves. 16 Also reflected in the paragraph is the fact that 17 in non-PSC environments it's quite possible of taking 18 a higher view of the oil price of the future might extend the life of some fields, make them more 19 20 commercial, or it might make other opportunities that 2.1 were not commercial at 16 become commercial at an \$18. 22 So I was aware there were two possible affects; 23 one would lead to lower reserves, one could lead to 24 higher reserves. And at the time, I really did not 25 have any data that would help me understand which

Page 255 direction the outcome would be. So I was raising the 1 2 issue that before we made a choice to move from 16 to 3 18, we should understand some of the -- basically the data and the facts first. 4 How would that price change have impacted 5 6 depletion charges? You reference it in that 7 paragraph. 8 The proposed price change was an increase; 9 therefore, it would have reduced our entitlement according to the way we calculated reserves at the 10 time; therefore, it would have increased the 11 12 depreciation charge. 13 When you say "reserves", are you referring to proved reserves? 14 15 Yes, I was implicitly here. Α 16 The following sentence discusses possible 0 17 offset of -- well, possible offset of what you just 18 discussed by an upward revision of reserves. see that, sir? 19 2.0 Α That's correct, yes. 2.1 Okay. Again, with regard to the reference 0 22 to reserves, were you talking about proved reserves? 23 Yes, I was. Α 24 Okay. And the offset that you were talking

about was that the increase in depletion charges,

25

	Page 256
1	meaning that any increase in depletion charges might
2	be offset by an upward revision in reserves?
3	MR. SMITH: Objection to form.
4	Q Withdrawn. I'll withdraw the question.
5	What was it that you were talking about? What
6	were you specifically suggesting might be offset?
7	A The offset here specifically refers to
8	potential upward reserves revisions that would offset
9	potential downward revisions.
10	Downward in PSCs, upwards in non-PSCs in a normal
11	tax royalty regime.
12	And I it's clear here that I did not know what
13	would the balance of that that would be.
14	Q Thank you. Now, again, just going back a
15	moment to UFDC. Let me ask this. I believe you had
16	mentioned in your opinion that a decline or decrease
17	in proved reserves would not have a material impact on
18	ROACE.
19	Would a decline in proved reserves, all other
20	things being equal, have a material affect on UFDC?
21	MR. SMITH: Objection to form.
22	A It would depend on how material the decline
23	in reserves was.
24	Q If it were a material decline in reserves.
25	MR. SMITH: Objection to form.
1	

Page 257 1 Α I can only speak to facts. There was a 2 material decline as we did reserve restatements at the 3 send of 2002, 2003 and the resulting impact on 4 depreciation was not material. 5 MR. SMITH: I'm sorry. You said 2002, 6 2003. 7 If I go back to when we actually did 8 restate, we restated the 2002 20F in prior years and we restated the 2000 -- we didn't restate 2003. 9 10 anyway, we recalculated depreciation based on the 11 restatements of 25 percent of the reserves. 12 And the resultant impact on depreciation I 13 believe was in the order of a few hundred million 14 dollars pretax. Therefore, after tax was adjusted. 15 The resulting impact on an earnings in the \$10 billion 16 range was I believe not material, and I certainly 17 don't recall it being followed up by investors at the 18 time as being material impact on earnings. So I cannot say what would have happened in 2001. 19 2.0 But based on what did happen when we made material 2.1 changes to proved reserves, the flow through to income 22 immediately is not that significant. 23 Okay. But you didn't answer my question 24 which was: What about the impact on UFDC? 25 You've discussed the impact on depreciation as a

Page 258 result of a material decrease in reserves. What would 1 2 the effect of a material decrease in proved reserves 3 be upon the unit finding and development costs? 4 MR. SMITH: Objection to form. I did misunderstand the question. 5 6 relationship between proved reserves and UFDC is more 7 By definition, depending on what period you 8 were looking at, it would feed through proportionally. 9 10 percent reduction could impact 10 percent change in 10 the UFDC. 11 Thank you. Now, again, just going back to 0 12 an issue that we discussed somewhat yesterday. 13 discussed at some length the percentage of Shell shares owned by investors in the United States. And I 14 believe we touched on -- but I just want to clarify --15 16 the percentage of Royal Dutch holders in the United 17 States. 18 Having said that, did you during your tenure at IR track the number of US investors that held shares 19 20 of -- excuse me -- yes, held shares of Royal Dutch? 2.1 We had information that would enable us to track that. We tracked the total number of shares 22 23 that were being traded on New York for the flow back across the Atlantic between New York and Amsterdam. 24

That was an indicator for us of at the time the

25

Page 259 impact of the S&P 500. So we were tracking those 1 2 total shares. 3 Of course that's not I don't think answering your 4 question directly because we don't know necessarily all of the beneficial owners of the shares as traded, 5 6 but we did know how many were actually traded on the 7 New York Stock Exchange. 8 So we tracked that in aggregate, and then 9 individually for individual investors we would track 10 buying and selling transactions for the big investors, some of whom would be US based. 11 12 During your tenure at IR if it's possible --13 withdrawn. 14 Do you recall for 2002 what the percentage of Royal Dutch shares held by US investors was? 15 16 MR. SMITH: Objection to form, 17 foundation. 18 I don't recall exactly. What I do recall is when we started the exercise to add -- to obtain 19 information, I was under the impression that we were 2.0 2.1 25 percent or so was based -- of the group was based 22 in the US, or was in general terms a US investor. 23 I was not aware or building in all of the subtle differences or nuances of US investors with US 24

overseas -- affected overseas subsidiaries, holdings

25

Page 260 stock in Shell Trading rather than Royal Dutch, nor 1 2 the reverse. 3 So the over 25 percent was my perception based on the information we had at the time available. 4 then as we began to develop information streams, I had 5 6 a better understanding over time. As I just 7 explained, how many were traded on the New York Stock 8 Exchange and for individual investors and what they 9 actually held. And I was certainly believe that over 10 that time, at least triggered by the S&P decision, and 11 subsequent followthrough, that proportion of shares 12 held in the US declined fairly significantly for the 13 group. 14 Do you recall how much that decline was? 0 15 MR. SMITH: Objection to form and 16 foundation. 17 Yesterday I talked about 5 percent drop 18 which is the immediate aftermath of the S&P 500 as to the best of my recollection. And I believe the fall 19 20 beyond that was -- it continued, the reduction of the 2.1 shares traded or held in the US. 22 Do you recall what the percentage was by the 23 time you left IR? 24 MR. SMITH: Objection to form and 25 foundation.

Page 261 No, I don't. 1 Α 2 As part of your duties and responsibilities Q 3 in investor relations, did you track the voting habits and tendencies of various groups of shareholders with 4 respect to Royal Dutch? 5 MR. SMITH: 6 Objection to foundation. 7 In the first couple of years, no. 8 I'm -- there was a time when we did track voting 9 recommendations, and certainly in 2004 leading up to the AGM we did work through proxies to assess the 10 11 likely voting intent. 12 I don't recall whether we had done that 13 previously in the 2003 AGM, but we certainly did not do it in my first couple of years. It was not -- just 14 15 not an issue. 16 Do you recall why it was that you undertook 17 that activity with respect to the 2003 AGM? 18 MR. SMITH: Objection to form and foundation. 19 2.0 I don't think we did for 2003. Α 2.1 I'm sorry, for 2004. Q 22 2004. I don't easily recall specifically Α 23 what we were looking for. 24 Mr. Henry, as a result of your or IR's 25 activities in connection with tracking voting trends

Page 262 1 in connection with the 2004 AGM, were you able to 2 discern whether investors in the United States, given 3 their -- the percentage of their holdings in Royal Dutch exercised a disproportionately large -- or had a 4 disproportionately large impact on the outcome of any 5 6 Royal Dutch resolutions? 7 MR. SMITH: Objection to form and 8 foundation. 9 To the best of my knowledge, one of the Α reasons we were looking in 2004 was the presence of a 10 11 group called Knight Vink Asset Management on the 12 register who were making -- had become a 13 self-appointed shareholder activist for the company 14 and were seeking to develop consensus or earn certain resolutions at the AGM, I just don't remember the 15 16 specific content. 17 We were then looking at the shareholder register 18 that would tell us both who held stock and who might vote, and were looking back at previous voting records 19 2.0 in as much as we could define them for previous AGMs, 2.1 although I'm struggling to remember whether there was 22 a legitimate connect. 23 It was more whether they voted or not rather than 24 what they voted on. Because overall, a very low

percentage of shareholders actually voted,

25

Page 263 particularly in the Royal Dutch meeting. 1 2 If I recall correctly, European shareholders have 3 a rather lower propensity to vote than US shareholders 4 who by and large are more activity. The Shell Transport and Trading, the majority of 5 6 shareholders are based in the UK, so the UK was the 7 focus of that effort in terms of understanding both 8 who does vote and, if they vote, what they were likely 9 to vote. 10 (Henry Exhibit No. 3 - e-mail string - marked for identification.) 11 12 BY MR. MacFALL: 13 This may help with respect to some of the Q 14 details you've just testified to. Mr. Henry, I'm 15 handing you a document that has been marked for 16 identification as Henry Exhibit 3. 17 I'm going to ask you to look at that and tell me 18 if you recognize it. 19 MR. MacFALL: While you are looking at 2.0 that, I would note for the record that the document marked as Exhibit 3 for identification has been 2.1 22 produced -- or was produced to us on hard drive. 23 is reproduced in native format. The document 24 identification number appears at the top.

MR. SMITH: While he's looking, I would

25

Page 264 just note for the record, at least as printed out, 1 2 this looks somewhat unusual in that the first -- or 3 maybe I guess it's the last, it's hard to tell --4 e-mail in this string, there is no name next to the from line or the to line, nor is there a time stamp 5 6 next to the sent line which ordinarily one would find 7 in association with a document of this kind. 8 note that for the record. 9 MR. MacFALL: I see that, Mr. Smith. Ι 10 would just note it appears it is misaligned. I don't 11 know that for a fact, but the name Henry -- Simon 12 Henry appears in the from line. 13 MR. SMITH: I'm sorry. I'm looking at Page 1 of 4, not 2 of 4. 14 15 MR. MacFALL: I'm sorry. I was looking 16 at Page 2. I see what you're saying. 17 Do you recognize the document, sir? Q 18 Α Yes, I do. 19 Okay. And for the record, with the caveat 20 that Mr. Colby properly noted with respect to the 2.1 first page, the balance of the document appears to be

25 You used the term AGM. Could you please define that

an e-mail string to and from various individuals

22

23

24

including yourself.

Before we get into the document, sir, I'm sorry.

Page 265 1 for me? 2 And also thank you for reminding me that it Α 3 was 2003. The AGM is the Annual General Meeting of the company typically held within six months of the 4 end of the previous year. 5 6 It's an annual general meeting of shareholders at 7 with various resolutions are proposed either by the 8 company or by shareholders, and the shareholders vote 9 on those, typically related to Government issues, 10 appointment of Directors, remuneration. 11 Thank you. Now, I would like, sir, 0 12 specifically to direct your attention to the third 13 page of the document. About halfway down the page 14 there appears an e-mail from you dated April 8th, 2003 15 to Philip Watts CCed to various individuals. 16 The subject line reads, "ST&T major shareholders: 17 Voting intentions." Do you see that, sir? 18 Α Yes, sir. Do you recall writing this e-mail to 19 0 2.0 Mr. Watts? 2.1 I recall the content, yes. Α 22 Okay. I would like now to direct your 23 attention to the following page which is the continuation of that e-mail. 24 And you'll see there appear two bullet points. 25

Page 266 And I would like specifically to direct your attention 1 2 to the second bullet point appearing on that page 3 beginning with the words, "for Royal Dutch last year." Do you see that, sir? 4 5 Α I do. 6 If you could read that paragraph to yourself 7 and just let me know when you're finish, sir. Okay. I'm done. 8 9 Okay. That paragraph indicates that of the 0 10 potential votes cast at the AGM in the prior year, 11 24 percent were actually cast; is that correct? 12 Of the total shareholder register that could Α 13 have voted, yes, only 24 percent actually were voted. 14 Okay. It continues that, "90 percent of Q 15 those votes cast were US based investors." Is that 16 consistent with your recollection, sir? 17 If reflects my earlier comment, yes, that 18 the more active shareholders were in the US, not 19 Europe. 20 The next sentence references -- well, 2.1 states, "even with the now reduced US influence," and 22 then continues. 23 Was that a reference to the affect of the 24 exclusion of Royal Dutch/Shell from the S&P 500?

Yes, it would.

25

Α

Page 267 1 MR. SMITH: Objection to form. 2 Yes, at that time it would have been. Α 3 Recognizing our previous discussion that the percentage held in the US had reduced over time. 4 That sentence then continues, "RD 5 resolutions are in effect decided in the US." 6 7 Is that consistent with your recollection of how 8 resolutions were decided with regard to Royal Dutch? 9 At the time? Α At the time. 10 0 11 I think the facts are there in the Α 12 statement. That was what we learned in the process 13 of -- that we discussed earlier of ascertaining who 14 voted in previous AGMs. 15 Just make it clear, this was for Royal Dutch 16 Petroleum, not Shell Transport and Trading which was 17 different. 18 I understand. Notwithstanding the subject 19 line said Shell Transport. Thank you. 2.0 You can put that aside, sir. 2.1 Now, again, just to follow up on something that 22 we discussed yesterday. With regard to the group 23 strategy presentations, you had indicated that during 24 your tenure at IR, they were from time to time 25 conducted in London and then in New York on the

Page 268 following day, correct? 1 2 Α That is correct. 3 Q I believe you also indicated that following 4 the London presentation, that during the flight to New York, you would discuss issues that arose at that 5 presentation in order to address such issues in New 6 7 York. 8 MR. SMITH: Objection to form. I think -- I don't remember exactly what I 9 10 said. But yes, we did on the flight over take the opportunity of the face time with the Executives to 11 12 review both the performance and, for example, Q and As 13 and whether we, as I, all felt they had addressed an issue correctly, and also the -- by then we would have 14 15 the first media and investor analyst reactions, as 16 well. 17 So we checked those and discussed how they may 18 react in New York, or maybe amend the way they 19 presented a particular issue. 2.0 Did Mr. Sexton have input into the 2.1 discussions that occurred between London and New York? 22 MR. SMITH: You mean on the airplane, 23 on the flight? 24 Q Yes. 25 Α Usually, no, because he was in the US

Page 269 1 answering the phone. I can't remember every time. 2 But the way it used to work is, before we got on 3 the flight, I would call David, or one of my team would call David and say, "Are there any issues hot in 4 the US we should discuss?" 5 And then David the following day, having had more 6 7 time to consider it, would usually verbally brief the 8 leaders when they arrived in the US. 9 I believe you previously stated that certain US analysts were able to participate in the London 10 11 presentation telephonically, correct? 12 MR. SMITH: Objection to form. 13 Α They were able to. In the group strategy presentation sometimes they did, sometimes they 14 15 didn't. 16 But yes, they were able to do so. They would 17 have the telephone details. 18 Do you recall any specific instance in which Mr. Sexton provided comments in advance of the New 19 20 York presentation based on something that was said by 2.1 US based analysts over the telephone? 22 I don't recall a specific instance, no. Α 23 Do you recall if, for any of the strategy 24 presentations, proved reserves was discussed as a 25 topic during the flight from London to New York?

Page 270 1 Α I recall one of the business strategy 2 presentations but not group strategy. But that 3 doesn't mean that it -- I just don't recall for a 4 group strategy. 5 Now, with respect to the business 6 presentation, was the format for the one that you 7 specifically recall the same as the group strategy 8 presentations that we've been discussing? 9 MR. SMITH: Objection to form. 10 Α It was very similar if I recall. 11 Was -- specifically, was there a 0 12 presentation conducted in either the UK or Europe 13 followed by a presentation in the United States? 14 Yes, there was. Α 15 Do you recall if -- withdrawn. 0 16 Do you recall approximately when it was that that 17 business presentation occurred? 18 I think that was the one in March, 2003. Α 19 Okay. Do you recall what business that 20 presentation concerned? 2.1 It was expiration of production. Α 22 Okay. Who were the Shell Executives who 0 23 presented at that business presentation? 24 Walter Van de Vijver, and I believe Malcolm Α 25 Brinded, and Linda Cook, and I think Mathias Bixel

Page 271 also presented. 1 2 Do you recall if proved reserves was 3 discussed as part of -- withdrawn. 4 Were prepared statements made during either the 5 London or New York portion of that business strategy 6 presentation? 7 Yes, they were. Α 8 Do you recall with regard to the London 9 presentation if any of those prepared statements 10 involved proved reserves? 11 Α Yes. 12 Do you recall generally what was said about 13 proved reserves during those prepared statements? 14 This followed the 2002 year-end reporting of Α financials and reserves. 15 16 So the end of 2002, the reserve replacement ratio 17 overall was 117, but excluding the acquisition of 18 Enterprise Oil was I think around 50 percent. If I remember correctly, and I'm sure you will 19 2.0 remind me, there were discussions around, of the 2.1 50 percent or so organic, what is the explanation of why it was 50 percent, and what are the future 22 23 prospects, and then what can we share or discuss with 24 the market? 25 And I -- again, if I remember correctly, there

Page 272 1 was a difference between oil and gas, and gas reserve 2 replacement was -- in particular was low. So there 3 was quite some discussion about what it takes to 4 generate new reserves in gas. And it all got fed into the statements, if my 5 6 memory serves me correctly. 7 When you say, "what it takes to generate new 8 reserves in gas," what is it you mean by that? 9 Which projects were being progressed? 10 what was the state of those projects? And how certain milestones in the development of the project might 11 12 lead to the booking of reserves and over what 13 timeframe. 14 Now, were these issues -- withdrawn. 0 15 Were those topics discussed during the 16 preparation for the London strategy presentation? 17 Yes, they were. 18 Did you discuss any of those topics with Q 19 Mr. Van de Vijver? 20 Α Prior to the presentation? 2.1 Prior to the presentation. Thank you. Q 22 I certainly discussed them with the EP team. Α 23 I would imagine I would have discussed it with 24 Mr. Van de Vijver, but I don't recall exactly how and 25 when. And I know there were some preparation meetings

Page 273 where Mr. Van de Vijver did not join us. 1 2 During the preparations for the EP strategy 3 presentation that we're discussing, was there any discussion about projects that had not reached FID for 4 which reserves had been booked? 5 6 MR. SMITH: Objection to form and 7 foundation. 8 So 2003? It's -- it's possible. And it was 9 discussed in the context of future implications in 10 terms of, as we progressed, what would be the impact on the future metrics that we would achieve and 11 12 report. 13 Q And by that, do you mean because reserves at various projects had already been booked, what the 14 15 impact would be upon Shell's ability to impact future 16 reserves? Is that what was discussed? 17 MR. SMITH: Objection to form. 18 I think broadly speaking, yes. Although Α 19 that was not necessarily the main topic of 2.0 conversation. But as we were looking forward, we knew 2.1 we were progressing business opportunities. And as 22 they progressed, we, particularly at IR, wanted to 23 understand what impact that had on reserves. 24 And I guess not mentioned it before, but none of

my IR team were from an EP background in terms of

25

- 1 being reservoir engineers or ever having really been
- 2 part of the reserves booking process.
- 3 Therefore, we were dependent on quite a lot of
- 4 correspondence with EP as to improving our
- 5 understanding of that process. So there would have
- 6 been quite a lot of correspondence between IR and EP
- 7 at that time.
- 8 Q Along those lines, do you recall if you had
- 9 read the Shell guidelines with respect to the booking
- of proved reserves at or about that time?
- 11 A I don't believe I had.
- 12 Q Did there come a time when you reviewed the
- 13 Shell guidelines regarding booking of proved reserves?
- 14 A Yes, there did. But definitely much later I
- 15 recall. Project Rockford at the time.
- Okay. Were you aware that there were SEC
- 17 requirements concerning the booking of proved reserves
- 18 back at the time of the 2003 EP strategy presentation?
- 19 A I was aware that there were SEC regulations,
- 20 clearly because they were reported in the 20F.
- I was aware of the principle of reasonable
- 22 certainty.
- I was not aware of a great deal more than that in
- 24 terms of the -- the overall framework.
- 25 What I would have been aware of was on specific

- 1 assets or projects, where over the previous -- as
- 2 reserves had become more of an issue in terms of my
- 3 job and the investors, and perceptions, I would have
- 4 asked questions of EP that would have built up my
- 5 knowledge over time. But I didn't look at the whole
- of the guidelines, nor, to be honest, would I
- 7 necessarily have understood them if I had.
- 8 Q I take it by your answer, but I just want to
- 9 clarify then, that at that time you had not read, am I
- 10 correct, the SEC -- well, SEC Rule 410 relating to
- 11 proved reserves.
- 12 A I still have not read all of SEC 410.
- 13 Q Thank you. Now, going back to the prepared
- 14 statements that were delivered at the March, 2003
- business EP strategy presentation, do you recall what
- 16 was said in connection with proved reserves in those
- 17 prepared statements?
- 18 A I think, if I recall correctly, the two
- 19 aspects; one was I think Walter termed education.
- 20 This is the life cycle of a project, approximate
- 21 timings, and how and when it was typical to recognize
- 22 reserves; and then secondly, some discussion about the
- 23 2002 figures in particular and how we expected to
- 24 improve our performance in that area going forward.
- 25 Q Thank you. Do you recall if

- 1 Mr. Van de Vijver distinguished between Shell's proved
- 2 reserves on an organic basis as opposed to the reserve
- 3 level including the Enterprise acquisition?
- A Again, without the document in front of me,
- 5 I can't confirm that. But I think, again, if I recall
- 6 correctly, he should have done that at that time.
- 7 And I believe in previous quarterly -- the
- 8 results announcement when we announced the proved
- 9 reserve replacement ratio for 2002, I'm fairly certain
- 10 we made that distinction anyway, so it was already
- 11 known in the market. I don't know whether Walter
- 12 referred to it.
- Q Was the format of the EP business
- 14 presentation such that there was a Q and A session
- with analysts and investors following the prepared
- 16 remarks?
- 17 A Yes, that was the format.
- 18 (Henry Exhibit No. 4 Strategy Presentation marked
- 19 for identification.)
- 20 A I'm not going to read all that one.
- 21 Q Maybe we can direct your attention
- 22 specifically to certain portions of this.
- Mr. Henry, I do apologize. While we were
- 24 discussing this, we were trying to locate the actual
- 25 document. I am now handing it to you. It is a

Page 277 document marked for identification as Henry Exhibit 4. 1 2 And I would ask you to take a look at that, sir. 3 MR. SMITH: How could you misplace a document this thick? 4 I think you probably should direct me to 5 6 where you want me to go. 7 Certainly. Q 8 This is the full transcript. 9 Mr. Henry, I believe I just heard you state 10 that this was the full transcript, and I would just note for the record that this is in fact a document 11 12 that relates to the strategy presentation that was 13 made in New York on March 27, 2003 which would have been the day after the actual presentation which you 14 15 were just discussing which I believe was the one in 16 London; is that correct? 17 Well, I was discussing both of them really, 18 and I guess the preparation was the same for both. 19 Okay. And were the prepared remarks that 20 were delivered at each of those two presentations the 2.1 same to the best of your recollection? 22 To the best of my recollection, yes, they Α 23 were, the prepared remarks. 24 Okay. The document that's in front of you, 25 sir, do you recognize this as a transcript of the

Page 278 prepared remarks that were delivered and the Q and A 1 session that followed? 2 3 MR. SMITH: Objection to form and 4 foundation. I recognize it as the transcript. 5 6 quess I have to share with you is that the prepared 7 remarks were not always followed by one of the 8 speakers in particular in terms of what he said as a 9 prepared remark. 10 0 The particular speaker that you're referring to, would that have been Mr. Van de Vijver? 11 12 It was, yes. Α 13 Do you recall if Mr. Van de Vijver departed Q from the prepared remarks during that March, 2003 EP 14 15 strategy presentation? 16 I don't remember specifically. In general, 17 I think less so than sometimes at that particular 18 presentation. Do you recall if the remarks delivered by 19 20 Mr. Van de Vijver at the London presentation differed 2.1 in any material way from the remarks that he delivered 22 at the New York presentation in March of 2003? 23 MR. SMITH: Objection to form. 24 I don't recall anything differing in a Α 25 material way because we would have raised that issue

- 1 anyway. The material would have meant we had to maybe
- 2 say something either at the following day's
- 3 presentation or, depending how material, it would have
- 4 been needed to go through a Stock Exchange release.
- 5 Q Mr. Henry, I would like now specifically to
- 6 direct your attention to -- it's actually the fifth
- 7 page of the document, but it bears Page No. 4 at the
- 8 top. Do you have that, sir?
- 9 A I do.
- 10 Q Okay. And actually, I'm sorry. If you turn
- 11 to Page No. 2, there is a caption that says, "EP
- 12 portfolio and performance."
- Beneath that appears Mr. Van de Vijver's name and
- 14 then a series of comments which run through and
- 15 including Page 4.
- I take it by that -- do you understand that to
- mean that this was Mr. Van de Vijver speaking?
- 18 MR. SMITH: Objection to form and
- 19 foundation.
- 20 A I do assume these are the words of Walter as
- 21 spoken at the time.
- Q Okay. Now, on Page 4, directing your
- 23 attention to the third paragraph appearing at the
- 24 bottom of the page, beginning with the words, "if you
- look at our proved reserves." Do you have that, sir?

Page 280 1 Α I do. If you would, if you could just read 2 Q 3 actually that paragraph and the following paragraph to yourself, and then we can discuss it when you're done. 4 How far down do you wish me to go? 5 6 Just to the -- that paragraph and the following paragraph on Page 5. Do you have that, sir? 7 8 Okay. 9 Okay. In the first sentence of the first 0 10 paragraph I asked to you look at, Mr. Van de Vijver is 11 discussing Shell's proved reserves, specifically the 12 trend relative to Shell's competition. 13 Do you remember generally what Shell's trend 14 relative to its competition was at about that time? 15 The trend at that time was Shell was Α 16 becoming less good on a comparative basis with the 17 competitors. 18 Mr. Van de Vijver continues suggesting that 19 reserves -- proved reserves should be viewed on a 20 long-term as opposed to a short-term basis. Do you 2.1 see that, sir? 22 Yes, I do. Α 23 Do you recall if that was one of the 24 communication points -- withdrawn. 25 Was that notion something that was discussed at

Page 281 IR prior to the presentation? 1 2 MR. SMITH: Objection to form. Yes, the focus on longer term rather than 3 Α 4 any given year was discussed. Was that ever memorialized or suggested as a 5 6 theme for Shell's senior executive when addressing the 7 investing public? 8 MR. SMITH: Objection to form. 9 I would expect that it was part of the 10 briefing notes that we would prepare for the 11 Executives. It would have been one of the points to 12 note when talking about proved reserves or reserve 13 replacement ratio. 14 Mr. Van de Vijver then continues and Q discusses what he calls "struggling to replace 15 16 reserves on the gas side". And I believe you 17 mentioned that before. 18 The reserves he's discussing or is mentioning 19 here, were those proved reserves? 2.0 MR. SMITH: Objection to form and 2.1 foundation. 22 The implication is that it was proved Α 23 reserves, yes. 24 He then continues indicating that, "Shell 25 has the strongest reserve base -- gas reserve base of

Page 282 its competitors." Do you recall if that were true? 1 2 That were true on the basis of proved Α 3 reserves reporting of Shell and competitors at that 4 time. Do you know if those proved reserve numbers 5 6 on the gas side included proved reserves that were 7 recategorized as part of Project Rockford? 8 In March, 2003 we would have been referring 9 back to the reserves as reported in the previous 20F which actually would have been for 2001 so, yes, they 10 11 would. 12 Do you recall if that would have included 13 reserves booked as proved in connection with the 14 Gorgon Project? 15 I believe it would. Α 16 Thank you. In the second paragraph that I 0 17 asked you to look at Mr. Van de Vijver discusses 18 Shell's ability to grow reserves while at the same 19 time growing production. Do you see that, sir? 2.0 (Shakes head affirmatively.) Α 2.1 Do you recall if Shell in fact was able to 22 grow reserves while increasing production in or about 23 March of 2003? 24 MR. SMITH: Objection to form. 25 Α If this is a statement about the future,

- 1 also talking about the growth over time, well, I don't
- 2 know. Maybe.
- 3 Matter of fact, this is a statement about the
- 4 past. So this would have been factually based on
- 5 production that had grown and reserves that had grown
- 6 over a previous period.
- 7 It's not clear which period Walter was referring
- 8 to here, but it's likely to be a five or a ten-year
- 9 period.
- 10 Q And again, that reserve growth mentioned by
- 11 Mr. Van de Vijver there would have -- excuse me --
- would that have included Gorgon, for example?
- 13 A If it were a five-year period, probably not.
- 14 If it were a ten-year period, it would have then.
- I also note here that the use of the word on this
- one I think reserve base is loose. At least in the
- thinking, it was not necessarily just proved reserves
- 18 here, this was the total resource base.
- 19 Q Okay. I would like now to direct your
- 20 attention to the following paragraph beginning with
- 21 the words, "allow me to give a little tutorial on
- 22 reserve replacements."
- Could you read that to yourself, sir, and let me
- 24 know when you're done?
- 25 A Just the one paragraph?

	Page 284
1	Q Yes.
2	A Okay. Okay.
3	Q First, let me ask you. Do you recall if the
4	substance of this paragraph was included in the
5	prepared remarks that were submitted to
6	Mr. Van de Vijver for delivery at that presentation?
7	A I think the substance was if the actual
8	words used were not.
9	Q Do you recall if the prepared remarks
10	included a reference to the tutorial?
11	A To this?
12	Q To the tutorial.
13	A Yes, I believe they well, it was not so
14	much tutorial, it was about just taking people through
15	the life cycle of the project that would help
16	hopefully improve the understanding in the market as
17	to which actions led to booking of proved reserves and
18	essentially give them a feel for what might happen in
19	future that would lead to booking of reserves for
20	Shell.
21	Q Now, specifically directing your attention
22	in that paragraph to the last sentence,
23	Mr. Van de Vijver is discussing unit finding and
24	development costs.
25	Reading that sentence where Mr. Van de Vijver

Page 285 1 indicates that, "If you don't look at that metric over 2 a long enough period, it results in a floored 3 perspective of the real strengths of the business." 4 Does that indicate to you that Shell's UFDC was higher at this point in time relative to its peers or was 5 6 higher than its peers at this point in time? 7 MR. SMITH: Objection to form. 8 The statement doesn't necessarily indicate 9 that, no. 10 0 Do you recall if Shell's UFDC was in fact 11 higher than its peers in or about March of 2003? 12 It depended which time period you calculated Α 13 it over, and I think that's the point that Walter was 14 making. If you calculated it for one year, you would 15 get a different result if you calculated it for five 16 or for 10 years. 17 Now, with regard to Mr. Van de Vijver's 18 discussion of both proved reserves and then UFDC -let's break it down. 19 20 With regard to proved reserves, do you know why 2.1 it was that Mr. Van de Vijver was discussing that 22 topic at that strategy presentation? 23 UFDC or proved reserves? Α 24 I'm sorry. Proved reserves. Q 25 Α Proved reserves. At the end of 2002, the

- 1 reported reserve replacement ratio for Shell
- 2 organically was -- I think I can probably find it in
- 3 here -- about 50 percent or so, and that was less than
- 4 the competitors.
- 5 This also followed the announced BP/TNK deal in
- 6 Russia which was a resource based deal and reserves
- 7 based deal, and the market was at the time very
- 8 sensitive to reserve resource, how many hyrdocarbons
- 9 do you have in the portfolio to be developed, and on
- 10 the back of that, that BP deal.
- 11 Q When you said, "the market was sensitive
- 12 to," do you mean that the market was interested in
- 13 proved reserves levels?
- 14 MR. SMITH: Objection to form and
- 15 foundation.
- 16 A The market was very interested in access to
- 17 hyrdocarbons in future. That was the big issue. Will
- 18 you have a deal in Russia? Will you have access to
- 19 hyrdocarbons that you can develop? Proved reserves
- 20 was one of the indicators there.
- 21 It started -- around this time some companies
- 22 started talking about a much broader resource base
- 23 than just reserves -- just proved reserves.
- 24 Q Separate and apart from this presentation,
- 25 do you recall speaking with investors in an informal

Page 287 context or analysts in or about March of 2003? 1 2 Yes, I would have then. Α 3 Q During the course of those conversations, do 4 you recall the topic of proved reserves coming up? MR. SMITH: Same timeframe? 5 6 Same timeframe. Thank you. 0 7 Α Not specifically, but I had mentioned it 8 would have done, yes. 9 Now, you say "not specifically". Do you 10 generally recall if investors or analysts inquired as to Shell's proved reserve levels in or about this time 11 12 period? 13 Α In general, yes, they did inquire. What I don't recall is a specific discussion with a specific 14 15 analyst. 16 Fair enough. Generally, was there a message Q 17 or theme that you attempted to convey to analysts and 18 investors during these conversations if you can 19 recall? 20 MR. SMITH: Objection to form. 2.1 If I recall correctly, we would say the 22 strategic aim was to replace every barrel we produced 23 over time, not given a one-year short time period. 24 And that we had a strong reserve base and reserve life 25 on which to develop projects into production and,

Page 288 1 therefore, we already had within our asset base good 2 resources that could be developed into future 3 production, future cash flows. 4 And I think we would have had as a general message this unit finding and development cost issue. 5 6 If you look at it over a very short period, you 7 have a -- the words used were totally flawed 8 perspective. I think it's a misleading indicator of a 9 performance of a company because, quite simply, in any given the aganting period, the shorter the aganting 10 11 period, the less relationship there is between what 12 you actually invest in that period and the trigger 13 points or milestones that enable you to book reserves 14 in that period. 15 The longer the period, the more likely you are to 16 include both all the investment and most of the 17 reserve bookings associated with the investment. 18 So that was quite an important message at the time, that any short period unit finding and 19 20 development cost calculation was potentially 2.1 misleading. 22 Do you recall discussing that topic, unit 23 finding and development costs, in conversations with 24 various analysts and investors in or about March of

25

2003?

Page 289 Α Not specifically. But in general, I believe 1 2 that conversation would have taken place. 3 Given what you just stated regarding UFDC, Q is that why that topic was addressed by 4 Mr. Van de Vijver at the March, 2003 EP strategy 5 6 presentation? 7 Yes. Yes, it was. Because it reflected the Α 8 fact that some analysts were using one-year unit 9 finding development costs to create unfavorable 10 comparisons between Shell and competitors. 11 Do you recall if there came a time 12 subsequent to Project Rockford when Shell went back 13 and recalculated its UFDC for various years subsequent to the recategorization of its proved reserves? 14 I believe we did. 15 Α 16 Generally, could you describe for me the 17 effect of the recategorization upon Shell's UFDC 18 through the year -- if you know, from the years 2003, 2004? 19 2.0 Generally speaking, it would have increased 2.1 the unit finding development costs for that period. 22 There may have been one year where it was at a lower 23 end, but generally it was an increase. 24 I believe you stated earlier that, given the Q 25 relationship between UFDC and proved reserves, a

	74033
	Page 290
1	change in proved reserves results in proportional
2	change in UFDC; is that correct?
3	A That is correct.
4	Q Is that in fact what happened as a result of
5	the recategorization that occurred after Project
6	Rockford?
7	A Yes, it is.
8	Q Thank you. I would like now to direct your
9	attention to the last paragraph on that same page,
10	Page 5.
11	Could read that to yourself, sir, and let me know
12	when you're done?
13	A Okay.
14	Q In the first sentence of that paragraph,
15	Mr. Van de Vijver discusses in connection with unit
16	finding costs basic SEC discipline, specifically with
17	regard to discovered volumes.
18	Do you know what it was that Mr. Van de Vijver
19	was referencing there, or what he was attempting to
20	convey?
21	MR. SMITH: Objection to form.
22	MR. MORSE: Objection to form.
23	A I believe at the time I would not
24	necessarily have known. I do now.
25	Q With the benefit of hindsight, could you

Page 291 please explain for me what your understanding of what 1 2 Mr. Van de Vijver was attempting to convey in that 3 sentence? MR. SMITH: Objection to form and 4 foundation. 5 With the benefit of hindsight, I believe 6 7 what Walter was conveying there was that -- and this 8 is me assuming what Walter was conveying there, not --I'm not aware of it -- but that there are SEC rules 9 required, definitions -- very technical definitions 10 11 about proved area, the size of the reservoir that is 12 being tested by a particular expiration well, and the 13 likely recovery factors. You calculate proved area, 14 the proved volume of depth, recovery factor, and 15 multiply. With hindsight, that is what he would have 16 been thinking of. 17 Okay. Am I correct based on your testimony 18 then that -- withdrawn. 19 Was this portion, this paragraph specifically, 20 part of the prepared remarks that IR prepared for 2.1 Mr. Van de Vijver in connection with his presentation? 22 I believe that we would have developed 23 prepared remarks about unit finding costs, but I would 24 consider it unlikely that we would have talked about

SEC discipline and SEC guidelines because we were

25

Page 292 aware that the volume denominator in the calculation 1 2 of unit finding cost by definition is not an SEC 3 parameter -- an SEC defined parameter. But to the extent that proved reserves is a 4 component of that calculation in UFDC. 5 This paragraph is about unit finding cost, 6 7 not unit --8 Q I'm sorry. 9 -- not unit finding and development costs. 10 Q I appreciate that. Thank you for your 11 clarification, sir. 12 Do you recall if you had an opinion as to the 13 accuracy of that statement -- and by that, I mean the 14 first sentence of that paragraph, the final paragraph 15 on Page 5 -- at the time that Mr. Van de Vijver stated 16 it? 17 I had no reason to doubt that. He was the 18 head of the business. Did you ever come to learn any information 19 which -- from which you can opine on the accuracy of 20 2.1 that statement now? 22 MR. SMITH: Objection to form and 23 foundation. 24 If I look back with the benefit of hindsight and my additional knowledge, I have no reason to 25